RUSSIAN · HIGH SCHOOL · LEVEL I

# Russian I

First edition · 12 units · 36 lessons · one school year · Midterm and final exam · Cyrillic with stress marks · A main and a backup video for every lesson · Quick reference

FIRST EDITION

## Course guide

Russian I is a first-year course in the most widely spoken language of Europe, written for high-school students. Over thirty-six weeks the student learns to read and write Cyrillic with correct stress, to greet and introduce people, and to talk about family, school, food, the town, clothing, weather and the seasons, the daily routine and the great Christian feasts, ending with the past and future tenses, the stories of Pushkin and Tolstoy, and the geography and history of Russia.

Grammar is taught step by step through use: the genders and the two verb conjugations; the accusative, prepositional, genitive and dative cases, with the instrumental introduced; verbs of motion (идти́ and е́хать), reflexive verbs, нра́виться, and the past and future tenses. Every lesson reads a verse from the Russian Synodal Bible of 1876 beside the exact King James Version, and Unit 12 tells how the Bible came to the Russian people, from Cyril and Methodius to the Synodal translation.

Each unit studies a painting: Matejko's Saints Cyril and Methodius, Tropinin's Lacemaker, Makovsky's children in a storm, Bogdanov-Belsky's Mental Arithmetic, Kustodiev's tea table, Polenov's Moscow courtyard, Surikov's snow-town game, Levitan's Golden Autumn, Bogdanov-Belsky's Sunday reading, Ivanov's Easter morning, Kiprensky's portrait of Pushkin and the Ostromir Gospel. The year closes with the student retelling a Tolstoy story in Russian and reciting John 3:16 in the Synodal Bible.

> Every embedded video comes from a channel approved for School Launch: RussianPod101 (short lessons, listening practice and vocabulary by native Russian teachers, the workhorse of this course). The videos play in YouTube's privacy-enhanced player.

> RussianPod101 videos usually begin or end with an invitation to visit its website; skip that part and stop the video when the lesson's part ends. Please preview every video yourself before you show it to your student. The videos were chosen by title and channel from channels approved for School Launch and checked one by one, and YouTube may show its own suggestions when a video ends, so stay nearby and stop the player when the lesson's part is done.

**Start with Lesson 1.1 →**

## Who it is for

Written for high-school students (grade 9 or older, about ages 14 and up) beginning Russian; no Russian is assumed. Students who finished the School Launch Grade 5–8 Russian courses will recognize Units 1–4 and can move faster there. The student reads the lessons on his or her own; a parent or teacher joins the speaking practice, asks the oral questions on the tests and checks the written work against the answer keys. Families who speak Russian at home can use the same lessons and let the student lead; each lesson has a note for heritage speakers.

## How to use this course

1. **The weekly rhythm.** The year has 36 lessons, one a week, each with four sessions of 40–50 minutes. Session 1 is the warm-up, the core ideas and the main video. Session 2 is the picture study (in the first lesson of each unit) or the backup video, the key terms, the Russian notebook and the flashcards. Session 3 is the activity. Session 4 is the worked examples, the practice, the game and the worksheet. At the end of each unit, take the unit test and do the unit challenge.
2. **Say it out loud every day.** A language is learned with the mouth and the ear. Read every Russian example aloud, say the week's sentences to someone at home, and listen to the videos more than once. Ten minutes of Russian out loud every day does more than an hour of silent study once a week.
3. **Stress marks.** Every Russian word of more than one syllable is printed with a mark over its stressed vowel (молоко́). Russian books for adults leave the mark out, but readers for learners print it, and so does this course. Learn every word

with its stress, and say unstressed o as a short a. Latin-letter transliteration is shown on the vocabulary cards in Unit 1 only; after that, each card gives an English sound guide.

4. **Cases.** Russian nouns change their endings to show their job in the sentence. This course introduces the cases one at a time, each with a clear use: the accusative for the object (Unit 5), the prepositional for where (Unit 6), the genitive with нет (Unit 10), the dative with нра́виться (Unit 8) and the instrumental with с (Unit 9). Keep a case chart in your notebook and add to it as you go.
5. **Flashcards and the word list.** The year teaches 216 words and phrases on its vocabulary cards, with many more in the key terms and examples. Unit 1: а́збука, бу́ква, сло́во, кот, вода́, нос, брат, шко́ла, чай, молоко́, мать, уда́ре́ние, здра́вствуйте, приве́т, до свида́ния, пока́, спаси́бо, пожа́луйста. Unit 2: и́мя, о́тчество, фами́лия, ты, вы, прия́тно, э́то, кто, что, ру́сский, америка́нец, по-ру́сски, я, мы, они́, где, как, студе́нт. Unit 3: семья́, роди́тели, оте́ц, сын, дочь, де́ти, есть, у, у него́, у неё, маши́на, соба́ка, мой, твой, наш, ваш, его́, чей. Unit 4: стол, доска́, тетра́дь, уче́бник, учи́тель, где, чита́ть, знать, понима́ть, рабо́тать, говори́ть, люби́ть, ноль, де́сять, два́дцать, со́рок, девяно́сто, но́мер телефо́на. Unit 5: хлеб, суп, ка́ша, есть, пить, обе́д, хоте́ть, ры́ба, мя́со, сок, карто́шка, соль, меню́, официа́нт, счёт, рубль, вку́сно, Мо́жно...?. Unit 6: го́род, у́лица, магази́н, по́чта, це́рковь, жить, идти́, е́хать, куда́, домо́й, авто́бус, пешко́м, напра́во, нале́во, пря́мо, спра́ва, далеко́, путь. Unit 7: голова́, рука́, нога́, глаз, се́рдце, боле́ть, оде́жда, руба́шка, пла́тье, пальто́, ша́пка, носи́ть, кра́сный, си́ний, голубо́й, зелёный, большо́й, хоро́ший. Unit 8: пого́да, хо́лодно, тепло́, дождь, снег, гра́дус, зима́, весна́, ле́то, о́сень, ме́сяц, янва́рь, нра́виться, мне, ему́, ей, нам, ну́жно. Unit 9: час, мину́та, вре́мя, у́тром, ве́чером, полови́на, просыпа́ться, встава́ть, умыва́ться, одева́ться, учи́ться, моли́ться, неде́ля, понеде́льник, пя́тница, суббо́та, воскресе́нье, снача́ла. Unit 10: Рождество́, Соче́льник, звезда́, ёлка, Спаси́тель, пода́рок, Па́сха, пост, ве́рба, кули́ч, воскре́снуть, вои́стину, нет, не́ было, не бу́дет, вре́мя, мно́го, ма́ло. Unit 11: вчера́, был, была́, бы́ли, сотвори́ть, пото́м, поэ́т, стихи́, моро́з, чуде́сный, проро́к, посла́ть, расска́з, писа́тель, а́нгел, сапо́жник, любо́вь, помо́чь. Unit 12: страна́, река́, о́зеро, го́ры, са́мый, мир, а́збука, бу́ква, Ева́нгелие, ве́ра, князь, давно́, Би́блия, перево́д, бу́ду, ле́том, возлюби́ть, ве́чный. Make a flashcard for each word

(Russian with its stress mark on the front, meaning and forms on the back). Run the deck at the start of every session; a card right three days in a row moves to a weekly pile.

6. **Word games.** The crossword, word-find and hangman games used in other School Launch language courses are typed in Latin letters; Russian needs a Cyrillic keyboard mode, which the shared games do not have yet, so the games are turned off for Russian. Each lesson has a spoken game instead.
7. **Tests and exams.** Each unit ends with a 50-point test; the first two questions are oral, asked by the parent. The midterm after Unit 6 and the final after Unit 12 are 100 points each. Answer keys for every worksheet, unit test and exam are separate printable pages for the parent.
8. **The Russian Bible.** Russian verses are quoted from the Synodal translation (Синода́льный перево́д), the Russian Bible authorized in 1876 after more than fifty years of work begun by the Russian Bible Society in 1813; it is still the Bible of most Russian-speaking churches, Orthodox and Protestant alike, and it is in the public domain. Verses are printed as in the 1876 text (with e where modern print may use ё, and without stress marks), with a dash for the spaced hyphen. Where the King James prints the LORD, the Synodal has Госпо́дь. The Psalms are numbered as in the Greek Old Testament, usually one lower than in the King James (Psalm 23 is Psalm 22 in a Russian Bible), so the lesson always gives the King James reference. The English verse is always the King James Version, quoted exactly.

# Scope and sequence

**UNIT 1 · WEEKS 1–3**

## Áзбука: The Alphabet and Greetings

The 33 letters of the Cyrillic alphabet in three steps (the familiar letters, the false friends, the new letters and signs), the stress mark and the reduction of unstressed o, and the first greetings and farewells, with Jan Matejko's Saints Cyril and Methodius.

**1.1** Familiar Letters and False Friends

**1.2** New Letters, Signs and Stress

**1.3** Здра́вствуйте! Greetings and Farewells

**UNIT 2 · WEEKS 4–6**

## Знако́мство: Meeting People

Introducing yourself and others: Меня́ зову́т…, ты and вы, first names, nicknames and patronymics; Э́то…, Кто э́то? Что э́то? and the three genders of nouns; nationalities; the personal pronouns, no verb to be in the present, and questions and answers with да, нет and не, with Vasily Tropinin's The Lacemaker.

**2.1** Меня́ зову́т…: Names, ты and вы

**2.2** Кто э́то? Что э́то? Gender and Nationality

**2.3** Как дела́? Pronouns and Questions

**UNIT 3 · WEEKS 7–9**

## Семья́: Family

Family words, у меня́ есть… for having, and the possessives мой, твой, его́, её, наш, ваш, их, with the plural of nouns met as phrases, with Konstantin Makovsky's Children Running from a Thunderstorm.

**3.1** Моя́ семья́: Family Words

**3.2** У меня́ есть…: Having

**3.3** Мой, твой, наш: Possessives

**UNIT 4 · WEEKS 10–12**

## Шко́ла: School, Verbs and Numbers

The classroom and Где? Вот…; the first verb pattern (чита́ть: чита́ю, чита́ешь, чита́ет…) and the second (говори́ть: говорю́, говори́шь…); and numbers from 0 to 100 with phone numbers, with Nikolai Bogdanov-Belsky's Mental Arithmetic.

**4.1** В кла́ссе: In the Classroom

**4.2** Я чита́ю, я говорю́: The Present Tense

**4.3** Счёт: Numbers to 100

**UNIT 5 · WEEKS 13–15**

## Еда́: Food and the Accusative

Food and drink, the irregular verbs есть (to eat) and пить (to drink), хоте́ть and the accusative case for the object of a verb (воду, ка́шу, суп), and ordering in a café, with Boris Kustodiev's Merchant's Wife at Tea.

**5.1** Я ем, я пью: Food and Drink

**5.2** Я хочу́ ка́шу: The Accusative Case

**5.3** В кафе́: At the Café

**UNIT 6 · WEEKS 16–18**

## Го́род: The Town and the Prepositional

Places in town, the prepositional case after в and на (в шко́ле, на по́чте), жить, the verbs of going идти́ and е́хать with transport (на авто́бусе), and asking and giving directions, with Vasily Polenov's Moscow Courtyard.

**6.1** Где ты живёшь? Places and the Prepositional

**6.2** Я иду́, я е́ду: Going Places

**6.3** Как пройти́…? Directions

**UNIT 7 · WEEKS 19–21**

## Те́ло и оде́жда: Body, Clothing and Adjectives

The body and У меня́ боли́т…; clothing with носи́ть and на мне…; and adjectives with their endings (но́вый, но́вая, но́вое, но́вые), colors and Како́й?, with Vasily Surikov's Taking the Snow Town.

**7.1** У меня́ боли́т голова́: The Body

**7.2** Что на тебе́? Clothing

**7.3** Како́й? Adjectives and Colors

**UNIT 8 · WEEKS 22–24**

## Пого́да: Weather, Seasons and Likes

The weather (хо́лодно, тепло́, идёт снег), temperature, the seasons and months (зимо́й, в январе́), and saying what you like with нра́виться and the dative pronouns, with Isaac Levitan's Golden Autumn.

**8.1** Кака́я сего́дня пого́да? The Weather

**8.2** Зимо́й и ле́том: Seasons and Months

**8.3** Мне нра́вится: Likes and the Dative

**UNIT 9 · WEEKS 25–27**

### Распоря́док дня: The Daily Routine

Telling time (Кото́рый час? час, два часа́, пять часо́в), reflexive verbs in -ся (просыпа́ться, умыва́ться, одева́ться, учи́ться), the days of the week and the order of a day (снача́ла, пото́м, по́сле э́того), with Nikolai Bogdanov-Belsky's Sunday Reading in a Village School.

**9.1** Кото́рый час? Telling Time

**9.2** Я просыпа́юсь: Reflexive Verbs

**9.3** Мой день и моя́ неде́ля: Days and the Order of a Day

**UNIT 10 · WEEKS 28–30**

### Пра́здники: Christmas, Easter and the Genitive

How Russian Christians keep Christmas (Рождество́, January 7) and Easter (Па́сха) and the greetings for each, and the genitive case after нет, не́ было and не бу́дет and for of, with Alexander Ivanov's study for The Appearance of Christ to Mary Magdalene.

**10.1** С Рождество́м Христо́вым! Christmas

**10.2** Христо́с воскре́се! Lent and Easter

**10.3** У меня́ нет вре́мени: The Genitive

**UNIT 11 · WEEKS 31–33**

### Бы́ло: The Past Tense, Pushkin and Tolstoy

The past tense of Russian verbs (-л, -ла, -ло, -ли), first steps in reading Russian literature with Alexander Pushkin's Winter Morning and his poem The Prophet, and Leo Tolstoy's story What Men Live By, with Kiprensky's portrait of Pushkin.

**11.1** Вчера́ я чита́л: The Past Tense

**11.2** Моро́з и со́лнце: Alexander Pushkin

**11.3** Чем лю́ди жи́вы: Tolstoy's Story

**UNIT 12 · WEEKS 34–36**

### Росси́я: The Land, the Letters and the Bible

The geography of Russia with superlatives (са́мый), the story of the Cyrillic alphabet, the Baptism of Rus' in 988 and the Ostromir Gospel, then the 1876 Synodal Bible, the future tense and a review of the year, ending with John 3:16 recited from memory.

**12.1** Са́мая больша́я страна́: Russia's Land

**12.2** Кири́лл и Мефо́дий: Letters and Faith

**12.3** Так возлюби́л Бог мир: The Synodal Bible and the Year

## Weekly pacing calendar

| WEEK | PLAN |
|---|---|
| 1 | • Session 1: Lesson 1.1 Familiar Letters and False Friends: warm-up, core ideas and main video |

| WEEK | PLAN |
| --- | --- |
| | • Session 2: Lesson 1.1 picture study or backup video, key terms, Russian notebook and flashcards<br>• Session 3: Lesson 1.1 activity (letter cards)<br>• Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet<br>*Four sessions a week: one to learn, one to look and write, one to do, one to practice. On the fifth day, run the flashcards and say the week's verse aloud in Russian. The midterm comes after week 18 and the final after week 36.* |
| 2 | • Session 1: Lesson 1.2 New Letters, Signs and Stress: warm-up, core ideas and main video<br>• Session 2: Lesson 1.2 picture study or backup video, key terms, Russian notebook and flashcards<br>• Session 3: Lesson 1.2 activity (alphabet chart)<br>• Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet |
| 3 | • Session 1: Lesson 1.3 Здра́вствуйте! Greetings and Farewells: warm-up, core ideas and main video<br>• Session 2: Lesson 1.3 picture study or backup video, key terms, Russian notebook and flashcards<br>• Session 3: Lesson 1.3 activity (greeting role-plays)<br>• Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet<br>• End of unit: Unit 1 review and unit challenge (my alphabet book) |
| 4 | • Session 1: Lesson 2.1 Меня́ зову́т…: Names, ты and вы: warm-up, core ideas and main video<br>• Session 2: Lesson 2.1 picture study or backup video, key terms, Russian notebook and flashcards<br>• Session 3: Lesson 2.1 activity (name cards)<br>• Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet |
| 5 | • Session 1: Lesson 2.2 Кто э́то? Что э́то? Gender and Nationality: warm-up, core ideas and main video<br>• Session 2: Lesson 2.2 picture study or backup video, key terms, Russian notebook and flashcards<br>• Session 3: Lesson 2.2 activity (gender sort)<br>• Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet |
| | |

| WEEK | PLAN |
|---|---|
| 6 | • Session 1: Lesson 2.3 Как дела́? Pronouns and Questions: warm-up, core ideas and main video<br>• Session 2: Lesson 2.3 picture study or backup video, key terms, Russian notebook and flashcards<br>• Session 3: Lesson 2.3 activity (interview)<br>• Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet<br>• End of unit: Unit 2 review and unit challenge (meet my family and friends) |
| 7 | • Session 1: Lesson 3.1 Моя́ семья́: Family Words: warm-up, core ideas and main video<br>• Session 2: Lesson 3.1 picture study or backup video, key terms, Russian notebook and flashcards<br>• Session 3: Lesson 3.1 activity (family photo album)<br>• Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet |
| 8 | • Session 1: Lesson 3.2 У меня́ есть…: Having: warm-up, core ideas and main video<br>• Session 2: Lesson 3.2 picture study or backup video, key terms, Russian notebook and flashcards<br>• Session 3: Lesson 3.2 activity (what we have)<br>• Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet |
| 9 | • Session 1: Lesson 3.3 Мой, твой, наш: Possessives: warm-up, core ideas and main video<br>• Session 2: Lesson 3.3 picture study or backup video, key terms, Russian notebook and flashcards<br>• Session 3: Lesson 3.3 activity (whose is it?)<br>• Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet<br>• End of unit: Unit 3 review and unit challenge (my family tree) |
| 10 | • Session 1: Lesson 4.1 В кла́ссе: In the Classroom: warm-up, core ideas and main video<br>• Session 2: Lesson 4.1 picture study or backup video, key terms, Russian notebook and flashcards<br>• Session 3: Lesson 4.1 activity (label the room)<br>• Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet |
| 11 | • Session 1: Lesson 4.2 Я чита́ю, я говорю́: The Present Tense: warm-up, core ideas and main video<br>• Session 2: Lesson 4.2 picture study or backup video, key terms, Russian notebook and flashcards |

| WEEK | PLAN |
| --- | --- |
| | • Session 3: Lesson 4.2 activity (verb wheel)<br>• Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet |
| 12 | • Session 1: Lesson 4.3 Счёт: Numbers to 100: warm-up, core ideas and main video<br>• Session 2: Lesson 4.3 picture study or backup video, key terms, Russian notebook and flashcards<br>• Session 3: Lesson 4.3 activity (number bingo)<br>• Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet<br>• End of unit: Unit 4 review and unit challenge (a school day in russian) |
| 13 | • Session 1: Lesson 5.1 Я ем, я пью: Food and Drink: warm-up, core ideas and main video<br>• Session 2: Lesson 5.1 picture study or backup video, key terms, Russian notebook and flashcards<br>• Session 3: Lesson 5.1 activity (russian tea)<br>• Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet |
| 14 | • Session 1: Lesson 5.2 Я хочу́ ка́шу: The Accusative Case: warm-up, core ideas and main video<br>• Session 2: Lesson 5.2 picture study or backup video, key terms, Russian notebook and flashcards<br>• Session 3: Lesson 5.2 activity (grocery store)<br>• Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet |
| 15 | • Session 1: Lesson 5.3 В кафе́: At the Café: warm-up, core ideas and main video<br>• Session 2: Lesson 5.3 picture study or backup video, key terms, Russian notebook and flashcards<br>• Session 3: Lesson 5.3 activity (a café menu)<br>• Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet<br>• End of unit: Unit 5 review and unit challenge (café russia) |
| 16 | • Session 1: Lesson 6.1 Где ты живёшь? Places and the Prepositional: warm-up, core ideas and main video<br>• Session 2: Lesson 6.1 picture study or backup video, key terms, Russian notebook and flashcards<br>• Session 3: Lesson 6.1 activity (map of my town)<br>• Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet |
| 17 | • Session 1: Lesson 6.2 Я иду́, я е́ду: Going Places: warm-up, core ideas and main video |

| WEEK | PLAN |
| --- | --- |
| | • Session 2: Lesson 6.2 picture study or backup video, key terms, Russian notebook and flashcards<br>• Session 3: Lesson 6.2 activity (transport survey)<br>• Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet |
| 18 | • Session 1: Lesson 6.3 Как пройти́…? Directions: warm-up, core ideas and main video<br>• Session 2: Lesson 6.3 picture study or backup video, key terms, Russian notebook and flashcards<br>• Session 3: Lesson 6.3 activity (treasure hunt)<br>• Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet<br>• End of unit: Unit 6 review and unit challenge (my town)<br>• Midterm exam (Units 1–6) |
| 19 | • Session 1: Lesson 7.1 У меня́ боли́т голова́: The Body: warm-up, core ideas and main video<br>• Session 2: Lesson 7.1 picture study or backup video, key terms, Russian notebook and flashcards<br>• Session 3: Lesson 7.1 activity (body diagram)<br>• Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet |
| 20 | • Session 1: Lesson 7.2 Что на тебе́? Clothing: warm-up, core ideas and main video<br>• Session 2: Lesson 7.2 picture study or backup video, key terms, Russian notebook and flashcards<br>• Session 3: Lesson 7.2 activity (dress the paper doll)<br>• Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet |
| 21 | • Session 1: Lesson 7.3 Како́й? Adjectives and Colors: warm-up, core ideas and main video<br>• Session 2: Lesson 7.3 picture study or backup video, key terms, Russian notebook and flashcards<br>• Session 3: Lesson 7.3 activity (color wheel)<br>• Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet<br>• End of unit: Unit 7 review and unit challenge (fashion through history) |
| 22 | • Session 1: Lesson 8.1 Кака́я сего́дня пого́да? The Weather: warm-up, core ideas and main video<br>• Session 2: Lesson 8.1 picture study or backup video, key terms, Russian notebook and flashcards |

| WEEK | PLAN |
| --- | --- |
| | • Session 3: Lesson 8.1 activity (weather station)<br>• Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet |
| 23 | • Session 1: Lesson 8.2 Зимо́й и ле́том: Seasons and Months: warm-up, core ideas and main video<br>• Session 2: Lesson 8.2 picture study or backup video, key terms, Russian notebook and flashcards<br>• Session 3: Lesson 8.2 activity (seasons wheel)<br>• Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet |
| 24 | • Session 1: Lesson 8.3 Мне нра́вится: Likes and the Dative: warm-up, core ideas and main video<br>• Session 2: Lesson 8.3 picture study or backup video, key terms, Russian notebook and flashcards<br>• Session 3: Lesson 8.3 activity (likes interview)<br>• Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet<br>• End of unit: Unit 8 review and unit challenge (a year in russia) |
| 25 | • Session 1: Lesson 9.1 Кото́рый час? Telling Time: warm-up, core ideas and main video<br>• Session 2: Lesson 9.1 picture study or backup video, key terms, Russian notebook and flashcards<br>• Session 3: Lesson 9.1 activity (paper clock)<br>• Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet |
| 26 | • Session 1: Lesson 9.2 Я просыпа́юсь: Reflexive Verbs: warm-up, core ideas and main video<br>• Session 2: Lesson 9.2 picture study or backup video, key terms, Russian notebook and flashcards<br>• Session 3: Lesson 9.2 activity (morning comic)<br>• Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet |
| | |

| WEEK | PLAN |
| --- | --- |
| 27 | • Session 1: Lesson 9.3 Мой день и моя́ неде́ля: Days and the Order of a Day: warm-up, core ideas and main video<br>• Session 2: Lesson 9.3 picture study or backup video, key terms, Russian notebook and flashcards<br>• Session 3: Lesson 9.3 activity (weekly planner)<br>• Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet<br>• End of unit: Unit 9 review and unit challenge (my week) |
| 28 | • Session 1: Lesson 10.1 С Рождество́м Христо́вым! Christmas: warm-up, core ideas and main video<br>• Session 2: Lesson 10.1 picture study or backup video, key terms, Russian notebook and flashcards<br>• Session 3: Lesson 10.1 activity (christmas card in russian)<br>• Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet |
| 29 | • Session 1: Lesson 10.2 Христо́с воскре́се! Lent and Easter: warm-up, core ideas and main video<br>• Session 2: Lesson 10.2 picture study or backup video, key terms, Russian notebook and flashcards<br>• Session 3: Lesson 10.2 activity (easter table)<br>• Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet |
| 30 | • Session 1: Lesson 10.3 У меня́ нет вре́мени: The Genitive: warm-up, core ideas and main video<br>• Session 2: Lesson 10.3 picture study or backup video, key terms, Russian notebook and flashcards<br>• Session 3: Lesson 10.3 activity (what is missing?)<br>• Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet<br>• End of unit: Unit 10 review and unit challenge (a russian christian year) |
| 31 | • Session 1: Lesson 11.1 Вчера́ я чита́л: The Past Tense: warm-up, core ideas and main video<br>• Session 2: Lesson 11.1 picture study or backup video, key terms, Russian notebook and flashcards<br>• Session 3: Lesson 11.1 activity (yesterday comic)<br>• Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet |
| | |

| WEEK | PLAN |
|---|---|
| 32 | • Session 1: Lesson 11.2 Моро́з и со́лнце: Alexander Pushkin: warm-up, core ideas and main video<br>• Session 2: Lesson 11.2 picture study or backup video, key terms, Russian notebook and flashcards<br>• Session 3: Lesson 11.2 activity (recitation and illustration)<br>• Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet |
| 33 | • Session 1: Lesson 11.3 Чем лю́ди жи́вы: Tolstoy's Story: warm-up, core ideas and main video<br>• Session 2: Lesson 11.3 picture study or backup video, key terms, Russian notebook and flashcards<br>• Session 3: Lesson 11.3 activity (story in pictures)<br>• Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet<br>• End of unit: Unit 11 review and unit challenge (my reading journal) |
| 34 | • Session 1: Lesson 12.1 Са́мая больша́я страна́: Russia's Land: warm-up, core ideas and main video<br>• Session 2: Lesson 12.1 picture study or backup video, key terms, Russian notebook and flashcards<br>• Session 3: Lesson 12.1 activity (map of russia)<br>• Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet |
| 35 | • Session 1: Lesson 12.2 Кири́лл и Мефо́дий: Letters and Faith: warm-up, core ideas and main video<br>• Session 2: Lesson 12.2 picture study or backup video, key terms, Russian notebook and flashcards<br>• Session 3: Lesson 12.2 activity (illuminated letter)<br>• Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet |
| 36 | • Session 1: Lesson 12.3 Так возлюби́л Бог мир: The Synodal Bible and the Year: warm-up, core ideas and main video<br>• Session 2: Lesson 12.3 picture study or backup video, key terms, Russian notebook and flashcards<br>• Session 3: Lesson 12.3 activity (year-end recitation)<br>• Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet<br>• End of unit: Unit 12 review and unit challenge (my year in russian)<br>• Final exam (cumulative) |

## Materials

**Russian notebook**

One for the year: vocabulary, verb and case charts, copied verses and writing.

**Index cards (about 500) and a box or binder rings**

For the flashcard deck that grows every lesson.

**An English Bible (King James Version)**

For reading each lesson verse in its chapter.

**A Russian–English dictionary or app (optional)**

For looking up words with their stress. Not required: every word is in the lessons.

**Household things for the activities**

Paper plates, sticky notes, a few food items and the like.

**A device to play the videos**

Every lesson has a main video and a backup.

## Grading

Grades come from steady daily work and from honest tests: a language is learned by repetition, and a student who speaks Russian aloud daily, keeps the flashcard deck and the notebook, and corrects his or her own practice will do well on the tests.

| PART | % |
|---|---|
| Daily speaking, flashcards and recitation | **20** |
| Russian notebook, worksheets and practice (corrected with the keys) | **20** |
| Unit tests (12) | **25** |
| Unit challenges (12) | **10** |
| Midterm exam | **10** |
| Final exam | **15** |

**Scale:** A 90–100, B 80–89, C 70–79, D 60–69. Below 60 on a unit test: review the unit's sentences and charts, then retake the test.

- A written answer counts when the letters and the endings are right. Stress marks are not required in the student's own writing, but the stress must be right when the answer is said aloud.
- A wrong ending costs one point; a wrong word costs the item.
- Pronunciation is graded on stress and courage, not on a perfect accent. Translations count when they are faithful, whether or not they match the King James wording.

## A note to parents

You do not need to know Russian to teach this course. Every Russian word has its stress mark, every practice question and test has its answer in a separate key, and every lesson has two videos with native-speaking teachers. Your job is to join the

speaking practice, ask the oral test questions, and check the written work against the keys.

Why Russian? Because it is the most widely spoken language of Europe and the key to the other Slavic languages; because it is the language of Pushkin, Tolstoy and Dostoevsky, of Tchaikovsky and Rachmaninoff; and because millions of Russian-speaking Christians, Orthodox and Protestant, kept their faith through seventy years of persecution.

This is a course in the Russian language and in the history, art and faith of the Russian people, not in modern politics: it does not take up the governments of Russia, Ukraine or any other country today. Russian holidays are taught as facts about Russian life; where a custom comes from folk belief, the lesson says so plainly. The Christian story is told from Scripture, and the history of the Russian Church is told factually and respectfully. Please preview every video yourself before you show it to your student. The videos were chosen by title and channel from channels approved for School Launch and checked one by one, and YouTube may show its own suggestions when a video ends, so stay nearby and stop the player when the lesson's part is done.

UNIT 1

## Áзбука: The Alphabet and Greetings

Lesson 1.1 teaches the letters that look and sound like English (А, К, М, О, Т, Е), the false friends (В, Н, Р, С, У, Х) and the story of the alphabet, with Matejko's Saints Cyril and Methodius.

Lesson 1.2 teaches the new letters (Б, Г, Д, Ж, З, И, Й, Л, П, Ф, Ц, Ч, Ш, Щ, Э, Ю, Я, Ё, Ы), the hard and soft signs, the stress mark and unstressed o.

Lesson 1.3 teaches greetings and farewells (здра́вствуйте, приве́т, до свида́ния, пока́), спаси́бо and пожа́луйста, and reading the first words aloud.

**PREREQUISITES**

- None. No Russian is assumed. Students who finished the School Launch Grade 5–8 Russian courses can move quickly through this unit.

**MASTERY CHECKLIST**

- ☐ I can read and write all 33 Cyrillic letters, printed and in cursive.
- ☐ I can tell the false friends from the English letters they look like.
- ☐ I can read a word with its stress mark and say unstressed
  - o as a short a.
- ☐ I can greet people and take leave formally and informally.

**OPTIONAL BOOKS AND RESOURCES FOR THIS UNIT**

- **Wiktionary (Russian entries)**: Free online: every Russian word with its stress, meaning, endings and often a recording by a native speaker.
- **Forvo**: Free pronunciation library: hear any Russian word said by native speakers (link only).

Not required. Every activity in this unit works with paper, pencil, scissors and the free links below. School Launch is independent and free.

**LESSONS IN THIS UNIT**


| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1.1 | **Familiar Letters and False Friends** | 4 sessions of 40–50 minutes |
| 1.2 | **New Letters, Signs and Stress** | 4 sessions of 40–50 minutes |
| 1.3 | **Здра́вствуйте! Greetings and Farewells** | 4 sessions of 40–50 minutes |


# Unit 1 test

Questions 1–2 are oral: the parent asks and marks. The rest are written, without notes. 50 points.

1. **5 pts**

   Oral: Recite the alphabet from А to Я.

2. **5 pts**

   Oral: Greet the parent formally, ask his or her name, and take leave.

3. **5 pts**

   Give the sound of В, Н, Р, С, У and Х.

4. **5 pts**

   Read and translate: ма́ма, па́па, дом, кот, рот.

5. **5 pts**

   Read and translate: ру́чка, ча́шка, ры́ба, щи (cabbage soup), чай.

6. **5 pts**

   Which syllable is stressed in молоко́, and how is each о said?

7. **5 pts**

   What do Ь and Ъ do?

8. **5 pts**

   Formal or informal? Здра́вствуйте, приве́т, пока́, до свида́ния.

9. **5 pts**

   Who were Cyril and Methodius, and why did they make an alphabet?

10. **5 pts**

    Write John 1:1a in Russian.

**ANSWER KEY**

1. А Б В Г Д Е Ё Ж З И Й К Л М Н О П Р С Т У Ф Х Ц Ч Ш Щ Ъ Ы Ь Э Ю Я.
2. Здра́вствуйте! Как вас зову́т? … До свида́ния!
3. V, n, r, s, oo, kh.
4. Mama, papa, house, cat, mouth.
5. Pen, cup, fish, shchi (cabbage soup), tea.
6. The last; mah-lah-КОН: the unstressed o sound like a short a.
7. Ь (soft sign) softens the consonant before it; Ъ (hard sign) separates a consonant from a following я, е, ё or ю.
8. Formal, informal, informal, formal (до свида́ния is used with everyone).
9. Greek missionary brothers of the 800s who made the first Slavic alphabet so that the Slavs could read the Gospel and worship in their own language.
10. В нача́ле бы́ло Сло́во.

Printable answer key (PDF, for the parent)

**UNIT CHALLENGE: MY ALPHABET BOOK**

Make a 33-page (or 33-panel) Russian alphabet book: for each letter, write it in print and in cursive, give a Russian word that begins with it (with the stress mark) and draw or paste a picture. Read the whole book aloud to your family.

| LOOK FOR | WHAT IT MEANS |
|---|---|
| **Speaking** | The student reads all 33 words aloud with correct stress. |
| **Accuracy** | Letters and words are written correctly. |
| **Product** | The book is complete, neat and illustrated. |
| **Effort** | The work is careful, complete and on time. |

**UNIT 1 · А́ЗБУКА: THE ALPHABET AND GREETINGS · LESSON 1.1 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES**

# 1.1 Familiar Letters and False Friends

**OBJECTIVES**

- Read the Cyrillic letters that look and sound like English.
- Learn the false friends: В, Н, Р, С, У, Х.
- Know where the Cyrillic alphabet came from.

> **Warm-up.** Look at this word: РЕСТОРÁН. You may read it as something strange, but it means restaurant. Today you learn why: some Russian letters look like ours but say something else.

**WATCH**

## Learn ALL Russian Alphabet in 2 Minutes - How to Read and Write Russian

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 1:31

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=KsLVdZBHFVI

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> at the start, then again after the core ideas; say each letter with the teacher.

**Note:** RussianPod101: the whole Russian alphabet in two minutes.

---

**BACKUP VIDEO**

**Learn Russian - Introduction to Russian Writing**

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 3:18

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Ao4NKQT_CMM

RussianPod101: an introduction to Russian writing.

**KEY TERMS**

**а́збука (AHZ-boo-kuh)**
Alphabet (from the old names of А and Б).

**бу́ква (BOOK-vuh)**
Letter.

**звук (zvook)**

Sound.

**кири́ллица (kee-REEL-lee-tsuh)**

Cyrillic script.

**сло́во (SLOH-vuh)**

Word.

### VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Russian is written in Cyrillic. The mark over a vowel (молоко́) shows the stressed syllable, the one said loudest; it is a teaching mark, not part of normal spelling. In the sound guides the stressed syllable is in capitals: mah-lah-KOH.

## а́збука

*azbuka*

**AHZ-boo-kuh**

noun · feminine

alphabet

## бу́ква

*bukva*

**BOOK-vuh**

noun · feminine

letter

## СЛО́ВО

*slovo*

**SLOH-vuh**

noun · neuter

word

## КОТ

*kot*

**koht**

noun · masculine

cat

## вода́

*voda*

**vah-DAH**

noun · feminine

water

## НОС

*nos*

**nohs**

noun · masculine

nose

### CORE IDEAS

**The story.** In 863 the Byzantine emperor sent two brothers from Thessalonica, Cyril and Methodius, to the Slavs of Moravia, who had asked for teachers to explain the Christian faith in their own language. Cyril made an alphabet for the Slavic sounds, and the brothers translated the Gospels and the services. Their students in Bulgaria

later created the alphabet we now call Cyrillic, named in Cyril's honor and built largely from Greek capital letters. When Prince Vladimir and the Eastern Slavs of Kievan Rus' were baptized in 988, these books and letters came with the faith.

**Familiar letters.** Six letters look and sound about the same as in English: А (a in father), К (k), М (m), О (o when stressed), Т (t) and Е (ye, as in yes). With them you can already read ма́ма, кот, там, ка́ктус.

**False friends.** Six letters look like English letters but stand for other sounds: В is v, Н is n, Р is a rolled r, С is s, У is oo, and Х is kh, like the ch in Scottish loch. So РЕСТОРА́Н is restaurant, ТАКСИ́ is taxi, ВОДА́ is water and НОС is nose. Russian has a lowercase form for every capital, mostly the same shape smaller: а в е к м н о р с т у х.

PICTURE STUDY



*Saints Cyril and Methodius*, Jan Matejko, 1885 · Oil on canvas · Basilica of the Assumption and Saints Cyril and Methodius, Velehrad, Czech Republic

Image: Wikimedia Commons, public domain

Matejko, the great Polish history painter, made this painting in 1885 for the thousandth anniversary of the death of Methodius, who died in 885 in Moravia, not far from where the painting hangs today.

**Look closely**

- What is each brother holding or doing?
- Why might the painter have put the open book at the center?
- What tells you this is a church?
- How does the painter show that these men are honored?

**Talk about it**

1. Why would a missionary make an alphabet instead of teaching people Greek or Latin?
2. What difference does it make to read the Bible in your own language?

ACTIVITY

## Letter cards

Make a set of 33 letter cards and start with the twelve from this lesson.

**You will need**

- Index cards
- Markers in two colors

**Steps**

1. On each card write a capital and lowercase letter on the front.
2. Write the sound and an example word on the back.
3. Color the false friends red so you remember them.
4. Drill the twelve cards until you can say every sound in under a minute.

**Tips**

- Find five Russian words on food labels, maps or signs that use only these twelve letters.

**Check your work**

☐ I made twelve cards.

☐ I can say every sound without mistakes.

RUSSIAN NOTEBOOK

1. Start your Russian notebook. Copy the twelve letters of this lesson five times each, capital and lowercase, and write eight words made only of them.

> **From history.** Saints Cyril and Methodius are honored by Orthodox and Catholic Christians alike, and May 24, the day of their memory, is celebrated in Russia and Bulgaria as the Day of Slavic Writing and Culture.

> **At home in Russian.** If your student already speaks Russian, learn to write the cursive letters, which differ much more from print than in English (т, д, и, л).

### WORKED EXAMPLES

**Example 1.** Read НОС.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Н is n, not h.
2. О is o, С is s.

**Answer:** Nos: nose.

**Example 2.** Read ТРÁКТОР.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Т р а к т о р: t-r-a-k-t-o-r.
2. Р is a rolled r.

**Answer:** Traktor: tractor.

### PRACTICE

1. Easy Give the sound of В and Н.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   V and n.

2. Easy Give the sound of Р and С.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   R and s.

3. Easy Read and translate кот.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Kot: cat.

4. Medium Read and translate ма́ма and вода́.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Mama; voda, water.

5. Medium Read РЕСТОРА́Н and ТАКСИ́.

▼ **Show answer**

Restaurant, taxi.

6. Medium What sound does У make?

▼ **Show answer**

Oo, as in boot.

7. Hard When and why did the Slavs receive their alphabet?

▼ **Show answer**

In the 860s, through Cyril and Methodius, so that they could read the Gospel in their own language.

8. Hard Read and translate ко́смос, метро́, торт.

▼ **Show answer**

Kosmos (space), metro (subway), tort (cake).

### COMMON MISTAKES

- Reading Р as English p. It is a rolled r: рот is rot.
- Reading Н as English h. It is n: нос is nos.

> **Make it a game · Sign reader.** A parent writes ten real Russian words made of today's letters on cards (ма́ма, кот, вода́, такси́, торт). Flip each card; the first to read it correctly keeps it.

> **Scripture.** "In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God." (John 1:1, KJV)
>
> Russian Synodal Bible (1876): *В начале было Слово, и Слово было у Бога, и Слово было Бог.* Cyril and Methodius began their translation, tradition says, with the first words of John's Gospel. The very first Slavic sentence written down was about the Word of God.

# 1.2 New Letters, Signs and Stress

**OBJECTIVES**

- Read the remaining letters of the alphabet.
- Use the soft and hard signs.
- Read words with the stress mark and say unstressed o as a short a.

> **Warm-up.** Some sounds in Russian need letters English does not have, like the sh in shop or the ch in chair. Today you learn the rest of the alphabet.

**WATCH**

### Introduction to Perfect Russian Pronunciation

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 4:26

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=XiFV0YduSLA

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> after the core ideas; repeat every example aloud.

**Note:** RussianPod101: an introduction to Russian pronunciation.

---

**BACKUP VIDEO**

**Top 5 Russian Pronunciation Mistakes to Avoid**

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 5:28

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=8UImQ3-yGLE

RussianPod101: the top five pronunciation mistakes to avoid.

**KEY TERMS**

**гла́сная (GLAHS-nuh-yuh)**
Vowel.

**согла́сная (sahg-LAHS-nuh-yuh)**
Consonant.

**мя́гкий знак (MYAHKH-keey znahk)**
Soft sign (Ь).

**твёрдый знак (TVYOHR-dihy znahk)**
Hard sign (Ъ).

**ударе́ние (oo-dah-RYEH-nee-yee)**

Stress (the loud syllable).

### VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Russian is written in Cyrillic. The mark over a vowel (молоко́) shows the stressed syllable, the one said loudest; it is a teaching mark, not part of normal spelling. In the sound guides the stressed syllable is in capitals: mah-lah-KOH.

**брат**
*brat*
**braht**
noun · masculine
brother

**шко́ла**
*shkola*
**SHKOH-luh**
noun · feminine
school

**чай**
*chay*
**chahy**
noun · masculine
tea

**молоко́**
*moloko*
**muh-lah-KOH**
noun · neuter
milk

**мать**
*mat*
**maht**
noun · feminine
mother

**ударе́ние**
*udareniye*
**oo-dah-RYEH-nee-yee**
noun · neuter
stress

### CORE IDEAS

**New consonants.** Б b, Г g, Д d, З z, Л l, П p, Ф f, Ж zh (the s in measure), Ц ts, Ч ch, Ш sh, Щ a long soft shch. Й is a short y, as in boy: чай (tea). Practice: брат, го́род, жук, царь, чай, шко́ла, щи.

**New vowels.** И is ee, Э is e in bet, and Ы is a sound between i and oo with no English match: say ee with your tongue pulled back. Four vowels add a y-sound in front: Я ya, Е ye, Ё yo, Ю yu. After a consonant they make it soft instead: мя́со, лёд,

люблю́. Ё is always stressed. The soft sign Ь softens the consonant before it (мать, mother); the rare hard sign Ъ keeps a consonant apart from the vowel after it (подъе́зд, entrance).

**Stress and o.** Every Russian word has one loud, stressed syllable, and Russian print does not mark it, so learners' books add an accent mark: молоко́. Only a stressed o sounds like o. An unstressed o, especially just before the stress, sounds like a short a: молоко́ is mah-lah-KOH, Москва́ is mahsk-VAH. Learn every word with its stress, as you would learn its spelling.

ACTIVITY

## Alphabet chart

Make a complete alphabet chart for your wall.

**You will need**

- Poster board
- Markers
- Ruler

**Steps**

1. Draw a grid of 33 squares.
2. Write each letter, capital and lowercase, in order.
3. Color the vowels one color, the consonants another and the signs a third.
4. Add a small word under each letter with its stress mark.

**Tips**

- Add the cursive form of each letter.

**Check your work**

- ☐ My chart has all 33 letters in order.
- ☐ Each word has its stress mark.

### RUSSIAN NOTEBOOK

1. In your notebook, copy the new letters five times each, then copy twelve words from this lesson with their stress marks and say each aloud.

> **From history.** In 1918 a spelling reform removed four old letters (ѣ, і, ѳ and ѵ) from the Russian alphabet and dropped the hard sign from the ends of words. The Synodal Bible was first printed in the old spelling; modern editions use the new one.

> **At home in Russian.** If your student already speaks Russian, practice the sound pairs that heritage speakers often spell wrong: о/а in unstressed syllables, and е/и (лес, лиса́).

### WORKED EXAMPLES

**Example 1.** Read шко́ла.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Ш is sh; к, о, л, а.
2. Stress on the first syllable.

**Answer:** SHKOH-luh: school.

**Example 2.** Read молоко́ correctly.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Stress on the last о.
2. The two unstressed о sound like a short a.

**Answer:** Mah-lah-KOH: milk.

### PRACTICE

1. Easy Give the sound of Ж, Ш and Ч.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Zh, sh, ch.

2. Easy Read and translate брат.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Brat: brother.

3. Easy Read and translate чай.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Chai: tea.

4. Medium Read and translate мя́со and лёд.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Myaso, meat; lyod, ice.

5. Medium Read Москва́ with the right vowel sounds.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Mahsk-VAH.

6. Medium What does the soft sign do in мать?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   It softens the т.

7. Hard Read and translate щи and ры́ба.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Shchi, cabbage soup; ryba, fish.

8. Hard Why does a learner need the stress mark?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Russian print does not show stress, stress can fall on any syllable, and it changes how vowels sound.

### COMMON MISTAKES

- Reading every o as o. Only stressed o sounds like o; unstressed o sounds like a short a.
- Saying Ы as plain ee. Pull your tongue back: ы is a sound of its own.

**Make it a game · Stress clap.** A parent reads a word; the student claps on the stressed syllable and then reads it back from the card. Use молоко́, ма́ма, вода́, шко́ла, го́род, Москва́, спаси́бо and others.

**Scripture.** “Thy word is a lamp unto my feet, and a light unto my path.” (Psalm 119:105, KJV)

Russian Synodal Bible (1876): *Слово Твое — светильник ноге моей и свет стезе моей* (Psalm 118:105 in the Russian numbering) God’s Word gives light for each step of the way, as letters give light to a reader.

UNIT 1 · А́ЗБУКА: THE ALPHABET AND GREETINGS · LESSON 1.3 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

## 1.3 Здра́вствуйте! Greetings and Farewells

OBJECTIVES

- Greet and take leave formally and informally.
- Say please, thank you and excuse me.
- Read short dialogues aloud.

**Warm-up.** How do you greet a friend? A teacher? A grandparent? English changes little, but Russian has a formal and an informal way of speaking. Today you learn both.

WATCH

## How to Greet Someone in Russian | Daily Russian Conversations #03

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 4:14

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=LEcDcPojrh0

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> after the core ideas; say each greeting with the speakers.

**Note:** RussianPod101 Daily Russian Conversations: how to greet someone.

---

**BACKUP VIDEO**

**10 Ways to Say Hello in Russian**

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 4:06

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=QUkg3Ajj0wU

RussianPod101: ten ways to say hello.

### KEY TERMS

**Здра́вствуйте! (ZDRAHST-vooy-tee)**
Hello! (formal).

**Приве́т! (pree-VYEHT)**
Hi! (informal).

**До свида́ния! (dah svee-DAH-nee-yuh)**
Goodbye!

**Пока́! (pah-KAH)**
Bye! (informal).

**Спаси́бо. — Пожа́луйста. (spah-SEE-buh pah-ZHAH-looys-tuh)**
Thank you. — You're welcome / please.

### VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Russian is written in Cyrillic. The mark over a vowel (молоко́) shows the stressed syllable, the one said loudest; it is a teaching mark, not part of normal spelling. In the sound guides the stressed syllable is in capitals: mah-lah-KOH.

## здра́вствуйте

*zdravstvuyte*

**ZDRAHST-vooy-tee**

greeting · formal

hello

## приве́т

*privet*

**pree-VYEHT**

greeting · informal

hi

## до свида́ния

*do svidaniya*

**dah svee-DAH-nee-yuh**

phrase

goodbye

## пока́

*poka*

**pah-KAH**

phrase · informal

bye

## спаси́бо

*spasibo*

**spah-SEE-buh**

word

thank you

## пожа́луйста

*pozhaluysta*

**pah-ZHAH-looys-tuh**

word

please; you’re welcome

### CORE IDEAS

**Formal and informal.** Здра́вствуйте (hello) is used with adults, teachers, strangers and anyone you call вы; it comes from the verb to be healthy, so it is a wish: be well! With family and friends say Здра́вствуй or Приве́т! The word is long; practice it in pieces: ZDRAH-stvooy-tye (the first в is silent).

**Time of day and farewells.** До́брое у́тро! (Good morning!), До́брый день! (Good afternoon!), До́брый ве́чер! (Good evening!). To take leave: До свида́ния! (Goodbye, literally until meeting) to anyone, Пока́! (Bye!) to friends, and Споко́йной но́чи! (Good night!).

**Courtesy.** Спаси́бо (thank you) comes from спаси́ Бог, God save you. The answer is Пожа́луйста (you are welcome), the same word as please. Извини́те means excuse me or sorry. A short dialogue: — Здра́вствуйте! — Здра́вствуйте! — Как дела́? — Хорошо́, спаси́бо.

ACTIVITY

## Greeting role-plays

Act out four short meetings in Russian.

**You will need**

- Cards with the four scenes
- A family member as partner

**Steps**

1. Scene 1: meeting the teacher in the morning.
2. Scene 2: meeting a friend after school.
3. Scene 3: thanking a shopkeeper and leaving.
4. Scene 4: saying good night to the family.

**Tips**

- Record your best scene and listen for the stress.

**Check your work**

- ☐ I used formal and informal greetings correctly.
- ☐ My stress was right on every word.

RUSSIAN NOTEBOOK

1. In your notebook, write every greeting and farewell from this lesson in two columns, formal and informal, and write two short dialogues.

> **From history.** Russians usually greet a person only once a day with здра́вствуйте; saying it again at the second meeting sounds odd. Men often shake hands when they meet, and close friends and family may kiss on the cheek.

> **At home in Russian.** If your student already speaks Russian, add the warmer greetings used in families: ба́бушка, как ты? and the blessing Бог в по́мощь! said to someone at work.

### WORKED EXAMPLES

**Example 1.** Greet your friend's grandmother in the evening.

▼ **Show solution**

1. She is an adult: formal.
2. Evening: До́брый ве́чер.

**Answer:** До́брый ве́чер! or Здра́вствуйте!

**Example 2.** Thank someone and answer the thanks.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Thank you: спаси́бо.
2. Answer: пожа́луйста.

**Answer:** — Спаси́бо! — Пожа́луйста!

### PRACTICE

1. Easy Say hello to a teacher.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Здра́вствуйте!

2. Easy Say hi to a friend.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Приве́т!

3. Easy Say goodbye to anyone.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   До свида́ния!

4. Medium Say good morning and good evening.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   До́брое у́тро! До́брый ве́чер!

5. Medium Say excuse me.

▼ **Show answer**

Извини́те!

6. Medium Where does спаси́бо come from?

▼ **Show answer**

From спаси́ Бог, God save you.

7. Hard Write a four-line dialogue between two friends meeting and parting.

▼ **Show answer**

— Приве́т! — Приве́т! Как дела́? — Хорошо́! Пока́! — Пока́!

8. Hard Why is Здра́вствуйте a wish?

▼ **Show answer**

It comes from здра́вствовать, to be healthy: be well!

### COMMON MISTAKES

- Saying Приве́т to a teacher. Use Здра́вствуйте with adults you call вы.
- Pronouncing the first в in здра́вствуйте. It is silent: ZDRAH-stvooy-tye.

> **Make it a game · Greeting relay.** A parent calls out a situation in English (a teacher in the morning, a friend at night, a shopkeeper who helped you). The student answers at once with the right Russian greeting or farewell. Three in a row correct earns a point.

> **Scripture.** “And, behold, Boaz came from Bethlehem, and said unto the reapers, The LORD be with you. And they answered him, The LORD bless thee.” (Ruth 2:4, KJV)
>
> Russian Synodal Bible (1876): *Господь с вами! Они сказали ему: да благословит тебя Господь!* Boaz greeted his workers with a blessing, and they answered with a blessing. A greeting can be a small prayer for the other person.

### UNIT 2

# Знако́мство: MEETING PEOPLE

Lesson 2.1 teaches Как вас зову́т? Меня́ зову́т…, the difference between ты and вы, and Russian names with their patronymics, with Tropinin's Lacemaker.

Lesson 2.2 teaches Э́то…, Кто э́то? Что э́то? and the genders of nouns (он, она́, оно́), with nationalities.

Lesson 2.3 teaches the personal pronouns, the missing verb to be, and yes–no and question-word questions with да, нет and не.

**PREREQUISITES**

- Unit 1: the student reads Cyrillic with stress marks and knows the greetings.

**MASTERY CHECKLIST**

- ☐ I can introduce myself and ask someone's name, formally and informally.
- ☐ I can tell when to use ты and when to use вы.
- ☐ I can tell the gender of a noun from its ending.
- ☐ I can ask and answer simple questions with кто, что, где and как.

**OPTIONAL BOOKS AND RESOURCES FOR THIS UNIT**

- **Wiktionary (Russian entries)**: Free online: every Russian word with its stress, meaning, endings and often a recording by a native speaker.

Not required. Every activity in this unit works with paper, pencil, scissors and the free links below. School Launch is independent and free.

**LESSONS IN THIS UNIT**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 2.1 | **Меня́ зову́т…: Names, ты and вы** | 4 sessions of 40–50 minutes |
| 2.2 | **Кто э́то? Что э́то? Gender and Nationality** | 4 sessions of 40–50 minutes |
| 2.3 | **Как дела́? Pronouns and Questions** | 4 sessions of 40–50 minutes |

# Unit 2 test

Questions 1–2 are oral: the parent asks and marks. The rest are written, without notes. 50 points.

1. **5 pts**
   Oral: Introduce yourself: name, nationality and where you live.
2. **5 pts**
   Oral: Ask the parent his or her name politely, and a friend informally.
3. **5 pts**
   Ты or вы? A teacher; your brother; two friends; a shopkeeper.
4. **5 pts**
   What is the patronymic of Ivan's son Pyotr and of Ivan's daughter Anna?
5. **5 pts**
   Он, она́ or оно́? стол, кни́га, окно́, мо́ре, ночь.

6. **5 pts**

   Answer: Кто э́то? (a picture of a teacher) and Что э́то? (a picture of a book).

7. **5 pts**

   Translate: He is Russian. She is American.

8. **5 pts**

   Make it negative: Э́то мой брат.

9. **5 pts**

   Answer with нет: Ты ру́сский?

10. **5 pts**

    Translate Matthew 16:16 from Russian: Ты — Христо́с, Сын Бо́га Живо́го.

**ANSWER KEY**

1. Меня́ зову́т…. Я америка́нец (америка́нка). Я живу́ в Аме́рике.
2. Как вас зову́т? Как тебя́ зову́т?
3. Вы; ты; вы; вы.
4. Пётр Ива́нович; А́нна Ива́новна.
5. Он, она́, оно́, оно́, она́.
6. Э́то учи́тель. Э́то кни́га.
7. Он ру́сский. Она́ америка́нка.
8. Э́то не мой брат.
9. Нет, я не ру́сский. Я америка́нец.
10. Thou art the Christ, the Son of the living God.

Printable answer key (PDF, for the parent)

### UNIT CHALLENGE: MEET MY FAMILY AND FRIENDS

Make a short illustrated presentation (slides or a poster) introducing five people you know in Russian: name and patronymic if you know it, nationality, and one more fact (Э́то мой па́па. Его́ зову́т…). Present it aloud, using ты and вы correctly in a short dialogue at the end.

| LOOK FOR | WHAT IT MEANS |
|---|---|
| **Speaking** | The student presents fluently and asks and answers questions. |
| **Accuracy** | Names, genders and pronouns are correct. |
| **Product** | The presentation is complete and neat. |
| **Effort** | The work is careful, complete and on time. |

UNIT 2 · ЗНАКО́МСТВО: MEETING PEOPLE · LESSON 2.1 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

# 2.1 Меня́ зову́т…: NAMES, ты AND вы

### OBJECTIVES

- Introduce yourself and ask someone’s name.
- Choose ты or вы.
- Understand Russian first names, nicknames and patronymics.

> **Warm-up.** What do you call your teacher, your pastor, your best friend? Russian sorts people into two groups when it speaks to them. Today you learn how.

WATCH

## Learn the Top 10 Must-Know Russian Lines you Need for Introducing Yourself

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 5:18

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=kVZSK59lytc

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> after the core ideas; pause and introduce yourself after each speaker.

**Note:** RussianPod101: the top lines for introducing yourself in Russian.

---

**BACKUP VIDEO**

### Learn How to Talk About Yourself in Russian | Daily Russian Conversations #06

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 3:43

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=fHx6QnMQp4s

RussianPod101 Daily Russian Conversations: talking about yourself.

**KEY TERMS**

**Как вас зову́т? (kahk vahs zah-VOOT)**
What is your name? (formal).

**Как тебя́ зову́т? (kahk tee-BYAH zah-VOOT)**
What is your name? (informal).

**Меня́ зову́т… (mee-NYAH zah-VOOT)**
My name is....

**О́чень прия́тно. (OH-cheen pree-YAHT-nuh)**
Nice to meet you.

**о́тчество (OHT-cheest-vuh)**
Patronymic (name from the father).

**VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK**

Russian is written in Cyrillic. The mark over a vowel (молоко́) shows the stressed syllable, the one said loudest; it is a teaching mark, not part of normal spelling. In the sound guides the stressed syllable is in capitals: mah-lah-KOH.

## и́мя

**EE-myuh**

noun · neuter

first name

## о́тчество

**OHT-cheest-vuh**

noun · neuter

patronymic

## фами́лия

**fah-MEE-lee-yuh**

noun · feminine

family name

## ты

**tih**

pronoun

you (informal, one person)

## вы

**vih**

pronoun

you (formal or plural)

## прия́тно

**pree-YAHT-nuh**

adverb

pleasant (О́чень прия́тно)

### CORE IDEAS

**My name is.** Russian says “they call me”: Меня́ зову́т А́нна. Ask a grown-up Как вас зову́т? and a friend Как тебя́ зову́т? Answer the introduction with О́чень прия́тно. (Very pleasant.) To introduce someone else: Э́то мой друг. Его́ зову́т Ива́н. Э́то моя́ сестра́. Её зову́т Ма́ша.

**Ты and вы.** Ты is you for one person you know well: family, a friend, a child, a pet, and God in prayer. Вы is you for anyone older or whom you do not know well, and also you for more than one person. A student says вы to a teacher; the teacher may say ты to a young student. When in doubt, use вы; a Russian will tell you if you may say ты.

**Names.** A Russian has a first name, a patronymic made from the father’s first name, and a family name: Алекса́ндр Серге́евич Пу́шкин was Alexander, son of Sergei. Sons take -ович or -евич, daughters -овна or -евна: Ива́н → Ива́нович, Ива́новна. Adults address teachers and elders by first name and patronymic, with вы: Здра́вствуйте, Мари́я Ива́новна! Friends use short forms: Алекса́ндр → Са́ша, Мари́я → Ма́ша, Ива́н → Ва́ня.

PICTURE STUDY



*The Lacemaker*, Vasily Tropinin, 1823 · Oil on canvas · Tropinin Museum, Moscow (this version; another is in the Tretyakov Gallery)

Image: Wikimedia Commons, public domain

Tropinin was born a serf and was given his freedom only at the age of forty-seven, in 1823, the same year he painted The Lacemaker. It made him famous, and he became one of the most loved portrait painters of Moscow.

**Look closely**

- What is the young woman doing with her hands?
- How does she seem to feel about the person looking at her?
- What details show that her work is careful and delicate?
- Where does the light fall?

**Talk about it**

1. If you could ask her name in Russian, what would you say: ты or вы? Why?
2. Why might a painter who had been a serf choose to paint a working woman with such dignity?

ACTIVITY

## Name cards

Make Russian name cards for your family, with patronymics.

**You will need**

- Card stock
- Markers

**Steps**

1. Write each person's first name in Cyrillic.
2. Make each patronymic from the father's or grandfather's name.
3. Add the short form if there is one.
4. Practice introducing each person: Э́то мой па́па. Его́ зову́т….

**Tips**

- Find the Russian form of your own name and make your patronymic.

**Check your work**

- ☐ Every card is spelled correctly.
- ☐ I introduced everyone aloud.

RUSSIAN NOTEBOOK

1. In your notebook, write your full name in Cyrillic with your patronymic, and a short dialogue of meeting a new person.

> **From history.** Until the 1860s most Russian peasants were serfs, bound to the land and to the landowner. Vasily Tropinin was one of them; his master trained him as a painter but freed him only in 1823. Serfdom was abolished in 1861 by Tsar Alexander II.

> **At home in Russian.** If your student already speaks Russian, list the family's full names with patronymics and the pet names (Са́шенька, Ма́шенька) used at home.

### WORKED EXAMPLES

**Example 1.** Make the patronymics from Пётр for a son and a daughter.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Пётр ends in a consonant: -ович, -овна.
2. The ё becomes е in the patronymic.

**Answer:** Петро́вич, Петро́вна.

**Example 2.** Ask a new adult neighbor his name and say nice to meet you.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Formal: вас.
2. Answer: О́чень прия́тно.

**Answer:** Как вас зову́т? … О́чень прия́тно.

### PRACTICE

1. Easy Say “My name is…”

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Меня́ зову́т….

2. Easy Ask a friend his name.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Как тебя́ зову́т?

3. Easy Say “Nice to meet you.”

   ▼ **Show answer**

   О́чень прия́тно.

4. Medium Ты or вы: your grandmother, the mail carrier, your sister.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Ты (in most families), вы, ты.

5. Medium Introduce your friend Pavel.

▼ **Show answer**

Э́то мой друг. Его́ зову́т Па́вел.

6. Medium What is Pushkin's patronymic, and what does it tell you?

▼ **Show answer**

Серге́евич: his father was Sergei.

7. Hard Make the patronymics for Ива́н's son and daughter and Серге́й's daughter.

▼ **Show answer**

Ива́нович, Ива́новна, Серге́евна.

8. Hard Greet your teacher О́льга Петро́вна formally.

▼ **Show answer**

Здра́вствуйте, О́льга Петро́вна!

### COMMON MISTAKES

- Saying Мой и́мя…. The usual way is Меня́ зову́т….
- Calling a teacher by first name alone. Use name and patronymic with вы.

> **Make it a game · Name chain.** Sit in a circle. The first player says Меня́ зову́т…. The next says Его́ (её) зову́т…, а меня́ зову́т…, and so on, naming everyone before. Add patronymics in round two.

> **Scripture.** "But now thus saith the LORD that created thee, O Jacob, and he that formed thee, O Israel, Fear not: for I have redeemed thee, I have called thee by thy name; thou art mine." (Isaiah 43:1, KJV)
>
> Russian Synodal Bible (1876): *назвал тебя по имени твоему; ты Мой* God knows each of His people by name. Names matter, because persons matter to Him.

# 2.2 Кто э́то? Что э́то? Gender and Nationality

**OBJECTIVES**

- Ask and answer Кто э́то? and Что э́то?
- Tell the gender of a noun from its ending.
- Say nationalities.

> **Warm-up.** In English a table is it. In Russian a table is he, a book is she, and a window is it. Today you learn how to tell which.

**WATCH**

### Talk About Gender and Nationality in Russian | Daily Russian Conversations #02

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 3:34

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=wDdg9ZUDeTM

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> after the core ideas; note the masculine and feminine form of each nationality.

**Note:** RussianPod101 Daily Russian Conversations: masculine and feminine nationality words.

---

**BACKUP VIDEO**

**Top 10 Russian Words for Nationalities You Must Know**

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 9:59

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=inIxZhh2QD8

RussianPod101: the top nationality words.

**KEY TERMS**

**Кто э́то? (ktoh EH-tuh)**
Who is this?

**Что э́то? (shtoh EH-tuh)**
What is this?

**он, она́, оно́ (ohn ah-NAH ah-NOH)**

He, she, it (masculine, feminine, neuter).

**америка́нец, америка́нка (ah-mee-ree-KAH-neets ah-mee-ree-KAHN-kuh)**

American (man, woman).

**ру́сский, ру́сская (ROOSS-keey ROOSS-kuh-yuh)**

Russian (man, woman).

### VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Russian is written in Cyrillic. The mark over a vowel (молоко́) shows the stressed syllable, the one said loudest; it is a teaching mark, not part of normal spelling. In the sound guides the stressed syllable is in capitals: mah-lah-KOH.

## э́то

**EH-tuh**

word

this is, that is

## кто

**ktoh**

question word

who

## что

**shtoh**

question word

what

## ру́сский

**ROOSS-keey**

adjective · noun

Russian (man); ру́сская (woman)

## америка́нец

**ah-mee-ree-KAH-neets**

noun · masculine

American man; америка́нка (woman)

## по-ру́сски

**pah-ROOSS-kee**

adverb

in Russian

### CORE IDEAS

**Э́то.** Э́то means this is, that is, these are, and never changes: Э́то дом. Э́то ма́ма. Э́то кни́ги. Ask about people and animals with Кто э́то? and about things with Что э́то?: Кто э́то? — Э́то соба́ка. Что э́то? — Э́то стол.

**Three genders.** Every Russian noun is masculine, feminine or neuter, and the ending usually tells you. Masculine nouns end in a consonant or -й: стол, брат, чай (он). Feminine nouns end in -а or -я: кни́га, ма́ма, неде́ля (она́). Neuter nouns end in -о or -е: окно́, мо́ре (оно́). Nouns in -ь can be either and must be learned: день (he), ночь (she). Words for men are masculine even in -а: па́па, де́душка.

**Nationality.** Russian nationality words have a man's and a woman's form: америка́нец, америка́нка; англича́нин, англича́нка; не́мец, не́мка. Russian is an adjective: ру́сский (man), ру́сская (woman). They are written with a small letter. Я америка́нец. Она́ ру́сская. The language: Я говорю́ по-ру́сски и по-англи́йски.

ACTIVITY

## Gender sort

Sort thirty Russian nouns into three gender boxes.

**You will need**

- Three boxes or envelopes marked он, она́, оно́
- Thirty word cards

**Steps**

1. Write thirty nouns you know on cards with stress marks.
2. Sort them by their endings.
3. Put the -ь words aside and look them up.
4. Check with the dictionary and say each noun with он, она́ or оно́.

**Tips**

- Add pictures to the cards and use them as flashcards.

**Check your work**

- ☐ I sorted all thirty cards.
- ☐ I can explain each choice from the ending.

### RUSSIAN NOTEBOOK

1. In your notebook, make three columns, он, она́ and оно́, and write ten nouns in each with stress marks.

> **From history.** More than a hundred peoples live within Russia, with dozens of languages, from Tatar to Chechen to Yakut, and Russian is the common language among them.

> **At home in Russian.** If your student already speaks Russian, add the nationalities of the family's friends and relatives, and practice the plural: ру́сские, америка́нцы.

### WORKED EXAMPLES

**Example 1.** Он, она́ or оно́: мо́ре?

▼ **Show solution**

1. It ends in -e.
2. -o and -e are neuter.

**Answer:** Оно́.

**Example 2.** Say "She is English. He is German."

▼ **Show solution**

1. Англича́нка for a woman.
2. Не́мец for a man.

**Answer:** Она́ англича́нка. Он не́мец.

### PRACTICE

1. Easy Ask "Who is this?"

▼ **Show answer**

Кто э́то?

2. Easy Ask “What is this?”

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Что э́то?

3. Easy Он, она́ or оно́: кни́га.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Она́.

4. Medium Он, она́ or оно́: окно́, чай, неде́ля.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Оно́, он, она́.

5. Medium Why is па́па masculine?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   It means a man; words for men are masculine even in -a.

6. Medium Say “I am American” (as yourself).

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Я америка́нец. / Я америка́нка.

7. Hard Say “She is Russian and speaks Russian and English.”

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Она́ ру́сская и говори́т по-ру́сски и по-англи́йски.

8. Hard Give the gender of день and ночь, and say how you know.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   День is masculine, ночь feminine; nouns in -ь must be learned.

### COMMON MISTAKES

- Writing Ру́сский with a capital letter. Nationalities and languages take a small letter.
- Thinking all -a nouns are feminine. Па́па and де́душка are masculine.

> **Make it a game · Gender slap.** Lay three cards on the table: ОН, ОНА́, ОНО́. A parent calls a noun; the first player to slap the right card scores. Include tricky ones like па́па, день and ночь.

> **Scripture.** “And God saw every thing that he had made, and, behold, it was very good. And the evening and the morning were the sixth day.” (Genesis 1:31, KJV)
>
> Russian Synodal Bible (1876): *И увидел Бог все, что Он создал, и вот, хорошо весьма*
> God looked at everything He had made, and it was very good. Э́то хорошо́: this is good.

UNIT 2 · ЗНАКО́МСТВО: MEETING PEOPLE · LESSON 2.3 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

# 2.3 Как дела́? Pronouns and Questions

OBJECTIVES

- Use the personal pronouns.
- Make sentences without a verb to be.
- Ask and answer questions with да, нет and не.

> **Warm-up.** In English we say I am a student. In Russian you say I student. Today you learn why, and how to ask questions with no change in word order.

WATCH

## Learn the Top 10 Responses to "How are you?" in Russian

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 3:52

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Hz_kg5DzRgo

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> after the core ideas; answer Как дела́? with each response you hear.

**Note:** RussianPod101: the top responses to How are you?

---

**BACKUP VIDEO**

### Learn Russian - Introduction to Russian

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 6:51

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=5EoGhEnH87w

RussianPod101: an introduction to the Russian language.

**KEY TERMS**

**я, ты, он, она́, оно́ (yah tih ohn ah-NAH ah-NOH)**
I, you, he, she, it.

**мы, вы, они́ (mih vih ah-NEE)**
We, you, they.

**Как дела́? (kahk dee-LAH)**
How are you? (How are things?)

**да, нет (dah nyeht)**
Yes, no.

**не (nyeh)**
Not.

**VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK**

Russian is written in Cyrillic. The mark over a vowel (молоко́) shows the stressed syllable, the one said loudest; it is a teaching mark, not part of normal spelling. In the sound guides the stressed syllable is in capitals: mah-lah-KOH.

## я

**yah**

pronoun

I

## мы

**mih**

pronoun

we

## они́

**ah-NEE**

pronoun

they

## где

**gdyeh**

question word

where

## как

**kahk**

question word

how

## студе́нт

**stoo-DYEHNT**

noun · masculine

student; студе́нтка (female)

### CORE IDEAS

**No verb to be.** In the present tense Russian leaves out am, is and are: Я студе́нт. (I am a student.) Она́ до́ма. (She is at home.) Between two nouns, writing uses a dash: Москва́ — столи́ца Росси́и. Peter's great confession has one: Ты — Христо́с, Сын Бо́га Живо́го. Russian also has no word for a or the: кни́га is a book or the book.

**Questions.** A yes–no question has the same words as a statement; only the voice rises on the key word: Э́то твой брат. (statement) and Э́то твой брат? (question). Question words come first: кто who, что what, где where, как how, почему́ why. Где ма́ма? — Ма́ма до́ма.

**Yes, no and not.** Да is yes, нет is no, and не (not) goes right before the word it denies: Я не студе́нт. Э́то не чай. A full answer: Ты ру́сский? — Нет, я не ру́сский, я америка́нец. To the common question Как дела́? answer Хорошо́, спаси́бо., Норма́льно. (fine) or Сла́ва Бо́гу, хорошо́. (Thank God, well), a reply many Russian believers use.

ACTIVITY

## Interview

Interview a family member in Russian and write up the answers.

**You will need**

- Question card
- Notebook

**Steps**

1. Write six questions: Как тебя́ зову́т? Ты ру́сский? Где твой дом? Как дела́? and two more.
2. Ask them aloud, with rising intonation.
3. Write the answers as full sentences without a verb to be.
4. Read the interview aloud.

**Tips**

- Interview a second person using вы.

**Check your work**

☐ I asked six questions.

☐ My answers have no verb to be and use не correctly.

RUSSIAN NOTEBOOK

1. In your notebook, write the personal pronouns, eight short sentences without to be, and four questions with their answers.

> **From history.** Russian has no articles, like Latin; it was never needed, because the endings and the word order show what is new and what is known in a sentence.

> **At home in Russian.** If your student already speaks Russian, practice the intonation contrast between questions and statements by recording and comparing.

### WORKED EXAMPLES

**Example 1.** Say “He is not a teacher; he is a doctor.”

▼ **Show solution**

1. No verb to be.
2. Не before учи́тель.

**Answer:** Он не учи́тель, он врач.

**Example 2.** Turn into a question: Ма́ма до́ма.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Same words.
2. Raise your voice on до́ма.

**Answer:** Ма́ма до́ма?

### PRACTICE

1. Easy Give the pronouns for I, we and they.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Я, мы, они́.

2. Easy Say “I am a student.”

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Я студе́нт. / Я студе́нтка.

3. Easy Answer Как дела́?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Хорошо́, спаси́бо.

4. Medium Ask “Where is Papa?”

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Где па́па?

5. Medium Say “This is not tea.”

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Э́то не чай.

6. Medium Answer with нет: Э́то твоя́ кни́га?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Нет, э́то не моя́ кни́га.

7. Hard Translate: Moscow is the capital of Russia.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Москва́ — столи́ца Росси́и.

8. Hard Translate: Thou art the Christ, the Son of the living God.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Ты — Христо́с, Сын Бо́га Жива́го.

### COMMON MISTAKES

- Adding есть for is: Я есть студе́нт. Leave it out: Я студе́нт.
- Putting не after the verb or word. He goes right before the word it denies.

> **Make it a game · Twenty questions.** One player thinks of a person or thing. The others ask yes–no questions in Russian (Э́то челове́к? Э́то живо́тное? Он ру́сский?). The answers are only Да or Нет. Guess within twenty.

> **Scripture.** “And Simon Peter answered and said, Thou art the Christ, the Son of the living God.” (Matthew 16:16, KJV)
>
> Russian Synodal Bible (1876): *Ты — Христос, Сын Бога Живаго* Jesus asked His disciples who they said He was. Peter answered with a sentence that needs no verb: Thou art the Christ.

### UNIT 3

# Семья́: FAMILY

Lesson 3.1 teaches the family words (роди́тели, брат, сестра́, сын, дочь, ба́бушка, де́душка) and describing a family, with Makovsky's painting of a sister carrying her brother through a storm.

Lesson 3.2 teaches У меня́ есть… (I have), У тебя́ есть…? and у него́, у неё, у нас, у них.

Lesson 3.3 teaches the possessives мой, моя́, моё, мои́ and their partners, and Psalm 127.

**PREREQUISITES**

- Units 1–2: the student knows the genders of nouns, the personal pronouns and Э́то….

**MASTERY CHECKLIST**

☐ I can name the members of my family and describe it.

☐ I can say what I and others have with

у … есть.

☐ I can use

мо й, тв ой, на ш ва ш and in all genders.

☐ I can use

ег о́, её их and , which never change.

### OPTIONAL BOOKS AND RESOURCES FOR THIS UNIT

- **Wiktionary (Russian entries)**: Free online: every Russian word with its stress, meaning, endings and often a recording by a native speaker.

Not required. Every activity in this unit works with paper, pencil, scissors and the free links below. School Launch is independent and free.

### LESSONS IN THIS UNIT


| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 3.1 | **Моя́ семья́: Family Words** | 4 sessions of 40–50 minutes |
| 3.2 | **У меня́ есть...: Having** | 4 sessions of 40–50 minutes |
| 3.3 | **Мой, твой, наш: Possessives** | 4 sessions of 40–50 minutes |


## Unit 3 test

Questions 1–2 are oral: the parent asks and marks. The rest are written, without notes. 50 points.

1. **5 pts**
   Oral: Describe your family: who is in it, their names and ages if you know them.

2. **5 pts**
   Oral: Ask the parent whether he or she has a brother or sister, and answer the same question yourself.

3. **5 pts**
   Give the Russian for parents, grandmother, grandfather, son, daughter.

4. **5 pts**
   Say “I have a sister” and “Do you have a brother?” (informal).

5. **5 pts**
   Say “He has a dog” and “They have a house.”

6. **5 pts**

   Give мой in the right form: … ма́ма, … брат, … окно́, … роди́тели.

7. **5 pts**

   Give наш in the right form: … дом, … семья́, … письмо́.

8. **5 pts**

   Translate: Her brother is a student. His sister is at home.

9. **5 pts**

   Why does его́ not change with the gender of the noun?

10. **5 pts**

    What is the fifth commandment (Exodus 20:12a)?

**ANSWER KEY**

1. У меня́ есть ма́ма, па́па, брат и сестра́. Моего́ бра́та зову́т…. (any accurate description)
2. У вас есть брат? … Да, у меня́ есть брат. / Нет, у меня́ нет бра́та.
3. Роди́тели, ба́бушка, де́душка, сын, дочь.
4. У меня́ есть сестра́. У тебя́ есть брат?
5. У него́ есть соба́ка. У них есть дом.
6. Моя́, мой, моё, мои́.
7. Наш, на́ша, на́ше.
8. Её брат — студе́нт. Его́ сестра́ до́ма.
9. It means of him; it agrees with the owner, not with the thing owned, and never changes.
10. Honour thy father and thy mother.

Printable answer key (PDF, for the parent)

### UNIT CHALLENGE: MY FAMILY TREE

Draw your family tree back to your grandparents (or great-grandparents) with every name in Cyrillic, the Russian word for each relation, and short sentences with possessives (Э́то мой де́душка. Его́ зову́т…). Present it aloud.

| LOOK FOR | WHAT IT MEANS |
|---|---|
| **Speaking** | The student presents the tree aloud with correct possessives. |
| **Accuracy** | Family words, у… есть and possessives are correct. |
| **Product** | The tree is complete and neat. |
| **Effort** | The work is careful, complete and on time. |

UNIT 3 · СЕМЬЯ́: FAMILY · LESSON 3.1 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

# 3.1 Моя́ семья́: Family Words

### OBJECTIVES

- Name the members of a family.
- Describe a family in simple sentences.
- Look closely at Makovsky's Children Running from a Thunderstorm.

> **Warm-up.** Who is in your family? Count them: parents, brothers, sisters, grandparents. Today you learn to name each of them in Russian.

WATCH

## Learn the Top 20 Must-Know Family Words in Russian

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 4:49

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=0ug_eJDM9bo

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> after the core ideas; point to a family photo as you say each word.

**Note:** RussianPod101: the top twenty family words. Parents: one example sentence is “My brother loves beer.”

---

**BACKUP VIDEO**

### Russian Words of the Week with Katya - Family

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 2:28

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=DmjhySUAOOk

RussianPod101: Words of the Week with Katya, family.

**KEY TERMS**

**семья́ (seem-YAH)**
Family.

**сын, дочь (sihn dohch)**
Son, daughter.

**де́ти (DYEH-tee)**
Children.

**роди́тели (rah-DEE-tee-lee)**
Parents.

**ба́бушка, де́душка (BAH-boosh-kuh DYEH-doosh-kuh)**
Grandmother, grandfather.

**VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK**

Russian is written in Cyrillic. The mark over a vowel (молоко́) shows the stressed syllable, the one said loudest; it is a teaching mark, not part of normal spelling. In the sound guides the stressed syllable is in capitals: mah-lah-KOH.

## семья́

**seem-YAH**

noun · feminine

family

## роди́тели

**rah-DEE-tee-lee**

noun · plural

parents

## оте́ц

**ah-TYEHTS**

noun · masculine

father

## сын

**sihn**

noun · masculine

son (сыновья́)

## дочь

**dohch**

noun · feminine

daughter (до́чери)

## де́ти

**DYEH-tee**

noun · plural

children

### CORE IDEAS

**The story.** In Konstantin Makovsky's painting of 1872, a storm is coming over the fields. A barefoot girl hurries across a narrow log bridge with her little brother on her back, while he clings to her and looks back at the dark clouds. Nobody tells us their names, but every Russian viewer knows what she is: ста́ршая сестра́, the big sister, who looks after the little ones. In many Russian village families the older children cared for the younger while the parents worked in the fields.

**The family.** Семья́ is the family. Роди́тели are the parents: ма́ма (or мать) and па́па (or оте́ц). Their де́ти are сын (son) and дочь (daughter), who are each other's брат and сестра́. Older and younger: ста́рший брат, мла́дшая сестра́. Then ба́бушка and де́душка, внук and вну́чка (grandson, granddaughter), дя́дя and тётя (uncle and aunt).

**Describing a family.** У нас больша́я семья́. (We have a big family.) Э́то мой оте́ц, а э́то моя́ мать. Мой брат — студе́нт. Note а, a soft and/but used to compare: Я до́ма, а брат в шко́ле. Many words for family members are irregular in the plural, so learn them as pairs: брат — бра́тья, сестра́ — сёстры, сын — сыновья́, дочь — до́чери.

PICTURE STUDY



*Children Running from a Thunderstorm*, Konstantin Makovsky, 1872 · Oil on canvas · State Tretyakov Gallery, Moscow

Image: Wikimedia Commons, public domain

Makovsky painted many scenes of village children. This one, from 1872, hangs today in the Tretyakov Gallery in Moscow.

**Look closely**

- What is the girl doing, and how does she feel?
- How does the boy feel? What does he look at?
- How does the painter show the coming storm?
- Why is the log bridge a dangerous place to run?

**Talk about it**

1. When has an older brother or sister, or a parent, carried you through something hard?
2. How does this painting show what a family is for?

ACTIVITY

## Family photo album

Make a small album of family photos with Russian captions.

**You will need**

- Photos or drawings
- Paper, glue

**Steps**

1. Choose eight family photos.
2. Under each, write who it is: Э́то мой де́душка.
3. Add one fact: Он врач. Она́ ста́ршая сестра́.
4. Show the album and read the captions aloud.

**Tips**

- Add a page about a family from the Bible: Авраа́м, Са́рра и Иса́ак.

**Check your work**

- ☐ Every caption uses the right family word.
- ☐ I read the album aloud.

RUSSIAN NOTEBOOK

1. In your notebook, write twelve family words with stress marks and five sentences about your family.

> **From history.** Pavel Tretyakov, a Moscow merchant, spent his life and fortune buying Russian paintings and in 1892 gave his whole collection to the city of Moscow. The Tretyakov Gallery is still the greatest museum of Russian art.

> **At home in Russian.** If your student already speaks Russian, add the old family words still used in literature: шу́рин, свояк, тёща, свекро́вь, and what each means.

### WORKED EXAMPLES

**Example 1.** Say “This is my younger sister.”

▼ **Show solution**

1. Younger: мла́дшая (feminine).
2. My: моя́.

**Answer:** Э́то моя́ мла́дшая сестра́.

**Example 2.** Say “I am at home, and my brother is at school.”

▼ **Show solution**

1. Contrast: a.
2. No verb to be.

**Answer:** Я до́ма, а брат в шко́ле.

### PRACTICE

1. Easy Give the Russian for family.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Семья́.

2. Easy Give the Russian for parents.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Роди́тели.

3. Easy Give the Russian for son and daughter.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Сын, дочь.

4. Medium Give the Russian for uncle and aunt.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Дя́дя, тётя.

5. Medium Say “We have a big family.”

▼ **Show answer**

У нас больша́я семья́.

6. Medium Give the plurals of брат and сестра́.

▼ **Show answer**

Бра́тья, сёстры.

7. Hard Describe the painting in two Russian sentences.

▼ **Show answer**

Э́то ста́ршая сестра́ и мла́дший брат. Они́ бегу́т домо́й.

8. Hard Say “My grandfather is a doctor, and my grandmother is a teacher.”

▼ **Show answer**

Мой де́душка — врач, а моя́ ба́бушка — учи́тельница.

### COMMON MISTAKES

- Saying бра́ты for brothers. The plural is irregular: бра́тья.
- Using и where Russian wants a. Use a to contrast two things: Я до́ма, а брат в шко́ле.

> **Make it a game · Who am I?.** A parent describes a family member in Russian (Э́то сын моего́ отца́, но не я!). The student answers with the family word (Э́то твой брат!). Then the student makes up a riddle.

> **Scripture.** “Honour thy father and thy mother: that thy days may be long upon the land which the LORD thy God giveth thee.” (Exodus 20:12, KJV)
>
> Russian Synodal Bible (1876): *Почитай отца твоего и мать твою* God commands children to honor their parents, and it is the first commandment with a promise.

# 3.2 У меня́ есть...: HAVING

**OBJECTIVES**

- Say what you have with у меня́ есть.
- Ask whether someone has something.
- Use у него́, у неё, у нас, у вас, у них.

> **Warm-up.** How would you say I have a brother? Russian does not use a verb like have. It says “by me there is a brother.” Today you learn this pattern.

**WATCH**

## Learn Russian | Listening Practice - Talking About Your Family in Russian

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 2:08

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=hN9b2lh1DPk

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> after the core ideas; write down every y... есть sentence you hear.

**Note:** RussianPod101: a short listening practice, talking about your family.

---

**BACKUP VIDEO**

**How to Talk about Your Family in Russian?**

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 7:27

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=WXIfoaGgAkY

RussianPod101: how to talk about your family in Russian.

**KEY TERMS**

**У меня́ есть… (oo mee-NYAH yehst)**
I have....

**У тебя́ есть…? (oo tee-BYAH yehst)**
Do you have...? (informal).

**у него́, у неё (oo nee-VOH oo nee-YOH)**

He has, she has (by him, by her).

**у нас, у вас, у них (oo nahs oo vahs oo neekh)**

We have, you have, they have.

**есть (yehst)**

There is (here: have).

### VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Russian is written in Cyrillic. The mark over a vowel (молоко́) shows the stressed syllable, the one said loudest; it is a teaching mark, not part of normal spelling. In the sound guides the stressed syllable is in capitals: mah-lah-KOH.

## есть

**yehst**

verb form

there is (у меня́ есть = I have)

## у

**oo**

preposition

by, at (у меня́ = I have)

## у него́

**oo nee-VOH**

phrase

he has

## у неё

**oo nee-YOH**

phrase

she has

## маши́на

**mah-SHIH-nuh**

noun · feminine

car

## соба́ка

**sah-BAH-kuh**

noun · feminine

dog

### CORE IDEAS

**By me there is.** Russian expresses having with y (by, at) + the owner + есть (there is) + the thing: У меня́ есть брат. (I have a brother.) The thing stays in its dictionary form. Ask by raising your voice: У тебя́ есть брат? and answer Да, есть. (Yes, I do.)

**The owner.** After y the pronouns take special forms: у меня́, у тебя́, у него́, у неё, у нас, у вас, у них. Notice the н- on него́, неё and них after a preposition. With

names, the owner takes an ending you will study later; learn these as phrases: у ма́мы, у па́пы, у бра́та. У па́пы есть маши́на. (Papa has a car.)

**When есть drops out.** If you already know the thing exists and are describing it, leave out есть: У меня́ больша́я семья́. (I have a big family.) У неё краси́вые глаза́. To say you do not have something, Russian uses нет with a changed ending, which you will learn in Unit 10; for now learn У меня́ нет бра́та. (I have no brother.) and У меня́ нет сестры́. as phrases.

ACTIVITY

## What we have

Make a survey of what each family member has.

**You will need**

- Chart paper
- Markers

**Steps**

1. List eight things: брат, сестра́, соба́ка, ко́шка, велосипе́д, телефо́н, кни́га, Би́блия.
2. Ask each person: У тебя́ есть...? or У вас есть...?
3. Mark the answers.
4. Write a sentence for each person: У па́пы есть....

**Tips**

- Graph the results and present them in Russian.

**Check your work**

☐ I asked everyone.

☐ My sentences use

y есть

...

co

rr

ec

tly

.

RUSSIAN NOTEBOOK

1. In your notebook, write the seven y-forms of the pronouns and eight sentences about what people in your family have.

> **From history.** Russian families often live close to grandparents, and in many families the ба́бушка helps raise the grandchildren. The word ба́бушка has even passed into English, where it can mean an old Russian woman or a head scarf.

> **At home in Russian.** If your student already speaks Russian, practice the formal question for guests (У вас есть…?) and the answers heard in shops (Есть! Нет, ко́нчилось).

### WORKED EXAMPLES

**Example 1.** Say “She has a cat.”

▼ **Show solution**

1. She after y: неё.
2. The thing stays: ко́шка.

**Answer:** У неё есть ко́шка.

**Example 2.** Ask your teacher whether he has a pen.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Formal: у вас.
2. Raise your voice.

**Answer:** У вас есть ру́чка?

### PRACTICE

1. Easy Say “I have a brother.”

   ▼ **Show answer**

   У меня́ есть брат.

2. Easy Ask a friend “Do you have a sister?”

   ▼ **Show answer**

   У тебя́ есть сестра́?

3. Easy Answer “Yes, I do.”

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Да, есть.

4. Medium Say “He has a car.”

   ▼ **Show answer**

   У него́ есть маши́на.

5. Medium Say “We have a dog.”

   ▼ **Show answer**

   У нас есть соба́ка.

6. Medium Say “They have a big house.” (describing it)

   ▼ **Show answer**

   У них большо́й дом.

7. Hard Say “Papa has a Bible, and Mama has a book.”

   ▼ **Show answer**

   У па́пы есть Би́блия, а у ма́мы есть кни́га.

8. Hard Explain why у него́ has an н.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Он, она́ and они́ add н- after a preposition: у него́, у неё, у них.

### COMMON MISTAKES

- Using the verb име́ть for having family. Russian uses у меня́ есть брат.
- Saying у его́. After у it is у него́.

> **Make it a game · Go fish (Russian).** Make pairs of picture cards (family members, animals, things). Ask other players: У тебя́ есть соба́ка? They answer Да, есть and hand it over, or Нет! and you draw from the pile. Most pairs wins.

> **Scripture.** “And if it seem evil unto you to serve the LORD, choose you this day whom ye will serve; whether the gods which your fathers served that were on the other side of the flood, or the gods of the Amorites, in whose land ye dwell: but as for me and my house, we will serve the LORD.” (Joshua 24:15, KJV)
>
> Russian Synodal Bible (1876): *а я и дом мой будем служить Господу* Joshua told the people to choose whom they would serve, and gave his own family’s answer: we will serve the Lord.

UNIT 3 · СЕМЬЯ́: FAMILY · LESSON 3.3 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

# 3.3 Мой, твой, наш: POSSESSIVES

**OBJECTIVES**

- Use мой, твой, наш and ваш in the right gender and number.
- Use его́, её and их.
- Learn Psalm 127:3.

> **Warm-up.** My brother, my sister, my window, my parents: in English my never changes. In Russian it changes to match the noun. Today you learn how.

WATCH

## Learn the Most Common Forms of Pronouns in Russian | Daily Russian Conversations #11

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 3:51

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=oHg7WhTGjgU

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> after the core ideas; listen for мой, моя́ and мои́.

**Note:** RussianPod101 Daily Russian Conversations: the most common forms of pronouns.

---

**BACKUP VIDEO**

### Conversation About Family - Russian Conversational Phrases

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 6:02

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=opbacAtvTLQ

RussianPod101: a conversation about family.

**KEY TERMS**

**мой, моя́, моё, мои́ (mohy mah-YAH mah-YOH mah-EE)**
My.

**твой, твоя́, твоё, твои́ (tvohy tvah-YAH tvah-YOH tvah-EE)**
Your (informal).

**наш, на́ша, на́ше, на́ши (nahsh NAH-shuh NAH-shee NAH-shih)**
Our.

**ваш, ва́ша, ва́ше, ва́ши (vahsh VAH-shuh VAH-shee VAH-shih)**
Your (formal or plural).

**его́, её, их (yee-VOH yee-YOH ihkh)**
His, her, their (never change).

**VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK**

Russian is written in Cyrillic. The mark over a vowel (молоко́) shows the stressed syllable, the one said loudest; it is a teaching mark, not part of normal spelling. In the sound guides the stressed syllable is in capitals: mah-lah-KOH.

## мой

**mohy**

possessive

my (моя́, моё, мои́)

## твой

**tvohy**

possessive

your, informal (твоя́, твоё, твои́)

## наш

**nahsh**

possessive

our (на́ша, на́ше, на́ши)

## ваш

**vahsh**

possessive

your, formal (ва́ша, ва́ше, ва́ши)

## его́

**yee-VOH**

possessive

his (never changes)

## чей

**chehy**

question word

whose (чья, чьё, чьи)

### CORE IDEAS

**Agreeing with the noun.** My, your, our and your (formal) take the gender and number of the noun they go with: мой брат, моя́ сестра́, моё окно́, мои́ роди́тели. The same for твой (your, to a friend): твой дом, твоя́ кни́га, твоё и́мя, твои́ де́ти. And наш, на́ша, на́ше, на́ши (our), ваш, ва́ша, ва́ше, ва́ши (your). Чей? asks whose and agrees too: Чей э́то дом? Чья э́то кни́га?

**His, her, their.** Его́ (his), её (her) and их (their) never change, because they mean of him, of her, of them: его́ брат, его́ сестра́, его́ де́ти. Её оте́ц is her father whether the noun is masculine or feminine. Say его́ as yeh-VOH: the г sounds like в here, as in the ending -ого.

**The psalm.** Psalm 127 (126 in the Russian numbering) says: Вот насле́дие от Го́спода: де́ти; награ́да от Него́ — плод чре́ва. Children are a heritage from the Lord. In a family everyone belongs to someone: мой сын, моя́ дочь, на́ши де́ти, на́ша семья́ — and all belong to God.

ACTIVITY

## Whose is it?

Play a sorting game with family belongings.

**You will need**

- Ten household objects
- Sticky notes

**Steps**

1. Gather ten objects that belong to different family members.
2. Label each with the owner in Russian: Э́то па́пина кни́га or Э́то его́ кни́га.
3. Ask Чей э́то…? / Чья э́то…? for each and answer.
4. Swap roles with a family member.

**Tips**

- Add plural things: Чьи э́то кни́ги? — Э́то на́ши кни́ги.

**Check your work**

- ☐ I asked and answered for all ten objects.
- ☐ My possessives agree with the nouns.

RUSSIAN NOTEBOOK

1. In your notebook, make a chart of мой, твой, наш and ваш in four forms, and write eight sentences, two with его́, её or их.

**From history.** In Russian icons and church language, the Mother of God is often called Богоро́дица, and Christians call one another бра́тья и сёстры, brothers and sisters, a habit that goes back to the New Testament.

**At home in Russian.** If your student already speaks Russian, learn свой (one's own) and the difference between Он лю́бит свою́ жену́ and Он лю́бит его́ жену́.

### WORKED EXAMPLES

**Example 1.** My window: мой, моя́ or моё?

▼ **Show solution**

1. Окно́ is neuter.
2. Neuter: моё.

**Answer:** Моё окно́.

**Example 2.** Say “Their children are at school.”

▼ **Show solution**

1. Их never changes.
2. No verb to be.

**Answer:** Их де́ти в шко́ле.

### PRACTICE

1. Easy Say “my mother.”

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Моя́ ма́ма.

2. Easy Say “my father.”

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Мой оте́ц.

3. Easy Say “our house.”

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Наш дом.

4. Medium Say “your (formal) family.”

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Ва́ша семья́.

5. Medium Say “her brother” and “his sister.”

▼ **Show answer**

Её брат, его́ сестра́.

6. Medium Ask “Whose book is this?”

▼ **Show answer**

Чья э́то кни́га?

7. Hard Say “My parents and your (informal) parents are friends.”

▼ **Show answer**

Мои́ роди́тели и твои́ роди́тели — друзья́.

8. Hard Translate: Lo, children are an heritage of the Lord.

▼ **Show answer**

Вот насле́дие от Го́спода: де́ти.

### COMMON MISTAKES

- Trying to make его́ agree with the noun. His, her and their never change: его́ сестра́, его́ де́ти.
- Saying мой кни́га. Кни́га is feminine: моя́ кни́га.

> **Make it a game · Чей? Чья? Чьё? Чьи?.** A parent holds up an object and asks with the right form of чей. The student answers with the right possessive (Э́то моя́ ча́шка). A wrong form passes the turn.

> **Scripture.** “Lo, children are an heritage of the LORD: and the fruit of the womb is his reward.” (Psalm 127:3, KJV)
>
> Russian Synodal Bible (1876): *Вот наследие от Господа: дети; награда от Него — плод чрева* (Psalm 126:3 in the Russian numbering) Children are a gift and a reward from God, not a burden.

### UNIT 4

## Шко́ла: School, Verbs and Numbers

Lesson 4.1 teaches school things and places, Где? Вот…, здесь and там, with Bogdanov-Belsky's painting of village boys solving a problem at the blackboard.

Lesson 4.2 teaches the present tense of verbs like чита́ть (the first conjugation) and говори́ть (the second), and Jesus' words Learn of me.

Lesson 4.3 teaches the numbers 0–100, phone numbers and simple arithmetic aloud, with Psalm 147:4.

**PREREQUISITES**

- Units 1–3: the student knows the pronouns, genders and possessives.

**MASTERY CHECKLIST**

☐ I can name the things in a classroom and say where they are.

☐ I can conjugate

чи та́ть, зна́ть, понима́ть, де́лать

and

ра бо́та ть

in the present.

☐ I can conjugate

го во ри́ть

and

л ю би́ ть.

☐ I can say any number from 0 to 100 and give a phone number.

### OPTIONAL BOOKS AND RESOURCES FOR THIS UNIT

- **Wiktionary (Russian entries)**: Free online: every Russian word with its stress, meaning, endings and often a recording by a native speaker.

Not required. Every activity in this unit works with paper, pencil, scissors and the free links below. School Launch is independent and free.

### LESSONS IN THIS UNIT


| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 4.1 | **В кла́ссе: In the Classroom** | 4 sessions of 40–50 minutes |
| 4.2 | **Я чита́ю, я говорю́: The Present Tense** | 4 sessions of 40–50 minutes |
| 4.3 | **Счёт: Numbers to 100** | 4 sessions of 40–50 minutes |


# Unit 4 test

Questions 1–2 are oral: the parent asks and marks. The rest are written, without notes. 50 points.

1. **5 pts**
   Oral: Say your phone number (or a pretend one) and count by tens to 100.

2. **5 pts**
   Oral: Answer: Что ты де́лаешь? Ты говори́шь по-ру́сски? Где твоя́ кни́га?

3. **5 pts**
   Conjugate чита́ть in the present.

4. **5 pts**
   Conjugate говори́ть in the present.

5. **5 pts**
   Fill in: Мы … (знать), они́ … (понима́ть), ты … (де́лать).

6. **5 pts**

   Translate: Where is the teacher? Here she is.

7. **5 pts**

   Write in words: 14, 40, 90, 100.

8. **5 pts**

   Write in words: 27 and 65.

9. **5 pts**

   Give the Russian for five classroom things.

10. **5 pts**

    Translate Proverbs 1:7a from Russian: Нача́ло му́дрости — страх Госпо́день.

**ANSWER KEY**

1. Any phone number read in pairs; де́сять, два́дцать, три́дцать, со́рок, пятьдеся́т, шестьдеся́т, се́мьдесят, во́семьдесят, девяно́сто, сто.
2. Я чита́ю (any verb). Да, я немно́го говорю́ по-ру́сски. Вот она́ / Она́ там.
3. Чита́ю, чита́ешь, чита́ет, чита́ем, чита́ете, чита́ют.
4. Говорю́, говори́шь, говори́т, говори́м, говори́те, говоря́т.
5. Зна́ем, понима́ют, де́лаешь.
6. Где учи́тельница? Вот она́.
7. Четы́рнадцать, со́рок, девяно́сто, сто.
8. Два́дцать семь, шестьдеся́т пять.
9. Any five: стол, стул, доска́, кни́га, тетра́дь, ру́чка, каранда́ш, окно́, дверь.
10. The fear of the Lord is the beginning of knowledge (wisdom).

Printable answer key (PDF, for the parent)

### UNIT CHALLENGE: A SCHOOL DAY IN RUSSIAN

Make a labeled photo or drawing tour of your school area (ten objects), then write and present eight sentences about what you and others do at school, using verbs from both patterns and at least four numbers.

| LOOK FOR | WHAT IT MEANS |
|---|---|
| **Speaking** | The student presents the tour and sentences aloud. |
| **Accuracy** | Verb endings and numbers are correct. |
| **Product** | The tour is labeled completely and neatly. |
| **Effort** | The work is careful, complete and on time. |

UNIT 4 · ШКО́ЛА: SCHOOL, VERBS AND NUMBERS · LESSON 4.1 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

# 4.1 В кла́ссе: In the Classroom

### OBJECTIVES

- Name school things.
- Ask Где? and answer with Вот..., здесь and там.
- Look closely at Mental Arithmetic.

> **Warm-up.** Look around the place where you study. Name everything you can in English. Today you learn the Russian names and how to say where things are.

WATCH

## Russian Words of the Week with Katya - School Supplies

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 3:08

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=515W5lAzE9E

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> after the core ideas; touch each object as you hear it.

**Note:** RussianPod101: Words of the Week with Katya, school supplies.

---

**BACKUP VIDEO**

### Weekly Russian Words with Katya - In the Classroom

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 3:34

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=wyLQnkiFTb4

RussianPod101: Weekly Words with Katya, in the classroom.

**KEY TERMS**

**Где…? (gdyeh)**
Where is...?

**Вот… (voht)**
Here is..., there is... (pointing).

**здесь, там (zdyehs tahm)**
Here, there.

**доска́ (dahs-KAH)**
Blackboard.

**тетра́дь (teet-RAHT)**
Notebook.

**VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK**

Russian is written in Cyrillic. The mark over a vowel (молоко́) shows the stressed syllable, the one said loudest; it is a teaching mark, not part of normal spelling. In the sound guides the stressed syllable is in capitals: mah-lah-KOH.

## стол

**stohl**

noun · masculine

table, desk

## доска́

**dahs-KAH**

noun · feminine

board

## тетра́дь

**teet-RAHT**

noun · feminine

notebook

## уче́бник

**oo-CHEHB-neek**

noun · masculine

textbook

## учи́тель

**oo-CHEE-teel**

noun · masculine

teacher; учи́тельница (woman)

## где

**gdyeh**

question word

where

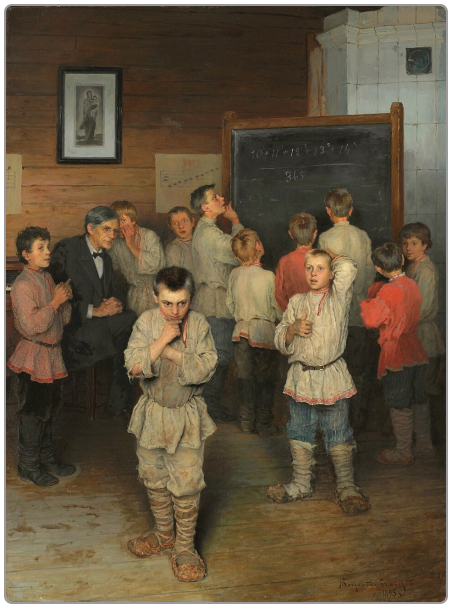
### CORE IDEAS

**The story.** In the 1870s a botany professor, Sergei Rachinsky, left Moscow University and went home to his village of Tatevo to open a school for peasant children, where he taught for the rest of his life. One of his pupils, Nikolai Bogdanov-Belsky, became a painter, and in 1895 he painted his old classroom: boys in bast shoes crowd around the blackboard, trying to work out a hard problem in their heads, while one whispers his answer to the old teacher. The problem on the board is the kind of puzzle Rachinsky loved to give.

**School things.** стол (table, desk), стул (chair), доска́ (board), кни́га (book), уче́бник (textbook), тетра́дь (notebook, feminine), ру́чка (pen), каранда́ш (pencil), окно́ (window), дверь (door, feminine). People: учи́тель, учи́тельница (teacher, man and woman), учени́к, учени́ца (pupil).

**Where?** Ask Где ру́чка? Answer by pointing: Вот она́! (Here it is!) or with a place word: Она́ здесь. (here) Она́ там. (there). Remember the pronoun follows the gender of the noun: Где каранда́ш? — Вот он. Где окно́? — Вот оно́. On the table is на столе́, in the bag в су́мке; you will learn these endings in Unit 6.

**PICTURE STUDY**



*Mental Arithmetic (In the Public School of S. A. Rachinsky)*, Nikolai Bogdanov-Belsky, 1895 · Oil on canvas · State Tretyakov Gallery, Moscow

Image: Wikimedia Commons, public domain

The problem on the blackboard asks for $(10^2 + 11^2 + 12^2 + 13^2 + 14^2) \div 365$, to be done in the head. The answer is 2.

**Look closely**

- How many boys can you count?
- What is each boy doing to think?
- Who is the man at the side, and what is happening there?
- What tells you this is a poor village school?

**Talk about it**

1. Can you solve the problem on the board in your head? Try it.
2. Why would a university professor give his life to teaching village children?

ACTIVITY

## Label the room

Label your study area in Russian.

**You will need**

- Sticky notes or index cards
- Tape
- Markers

**Steps**

1. Write the Russian names of twelve objects with stress marks.
2. Stick each label on its object.
3. Leave them up for two weeks and say each name when you use it.
4. Have a family member ask Где…? and point and answer Вот он/она́/оно́.

**Tips**

- Add a label for each family member's place at the table.

**Check your work**

☐ I labeled twelve objects.

☐ I can answer

Гд ? for each.
е
…

RUSSIAN NOTEBOOK

1. In your notebook, draw your desk and label everything on it in Russian, then write five Где…? questions with answers.

> **From history.** Rachinsky's school taught reading, writing, arithmetic, church singing and the Scriptures, and he helped many village schools in Russia follow his example. Several of his pupils became teachers, priests and artists.

> **At home in Russian.** If your student already speaks Russian, read about Rachinsky's school and learn the subjects in Russian: матема́тика, исто́рия, литерату́ра, физкульту́ра.

### WORKED EXAMPLES

**Example 1.** Ask where the notebook is and answer "Here it is."

▼ **Show solution**

1. Тетра́дь is feminine (-ь, learn it).
2. She: она́.

**Answer:** Где тетра́дь? — Вот она́.

**Example 2.** Say "The teacher is here, and the pupils are there."

▼ **Show solution**

1. Здесь, там.
2. Contrast: а.

**Answer:** Учи́тель здесь, а ученики́ там.

### PRACTICE

1. Easy Give the Russian for book and pen.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Кни́га, ру́чка.

2. Easy Ask "Where is the door?"

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Где дверь?

3. Easy Say "Here it is" about a pencil.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Вот он.

4. Medium Give the Russian for board, notebook and textbook.

▼ **Show answer**

Доска́, тетра́дь, уче́бник.

5. Medium Say “The window is there.”

▼ **Show answer**

Окно́ там.

6. Medium Give the man’s and woman’s words for teacher.

▼ **Show answer**

Учи́тель, учи́тельница.

7. Hard Solve the blackboard problem and say the answer in Russian.

▼ **Show answer**

Два.

8. Hard Describe the painting in two sentences.

▼ **Show answer**

Э́то шко́ла. Ученики́ ду́мают, а оди́н учени́к говори́т с учи́телем.

### COMMON MISTAKES

- Saying Вот он for a feminine thing. Match the gender: Где ру́чка? — Вот она́.
- Treating тетра́дь and дверь as masculine. Both are feminine.

> **Make it a game · Где? Вот!.** A parent hides five classroom objects around the room. The student asks Где каранда́ш? and the parent answers Здесь! (warmer) or Там! (cooler) until it is found. Then the student says Вот он! Switch roles.

> **Scripture.** “The fear of the LORD is the beginning of knowledge: but fools despise wisdom and instruction.” (Proverbs 1:7, KJV)
>
> Russian Synodal Bible (1876): *Начало мудрости страх Господень* All true learning begins with reverence for God, the Maker of the world we study.

# 4.2 Я чита́ю, я говорю́: The Present Tense

**OBJECTIVES**

- Conjugate verbs like чита́ть (first conjugation).
- Conjugate verbs like говори́ть (second conjugation).
- Learn Matthew 11:29.

> **Warm-up.** In English, I read, you read, he reads: only one ending changes. In Russian every person has its own ending. Today you learn the two patterns that cover most verbs.

**WATCH**

## Learn Russian - Introduction to Russian Grammar

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 5:06

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=dt27YDhhBE4

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> after the core ideas; write down every verb you hear and its person.

**Note:** RussianPod101: an introduction to Russian grammar.

---

**BACKUP VIDEO**

**Weekly Russian Words with Katya - Studying a Language**

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 1:44

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=sosHSbgdriY

RussianPod101: Weekly Words with Katya, studying a language.

**KEY TERMS**

**чита́ть (chee-TAHT)**
To read.

**знать (znaht)**
To know.

**понима́ть (puh-nee-MAHT)**
To understand.

**говори́ть (guh-vah-REET)**
To speak, to say.

**люби́ть (lyoo-BEET)**

To love.

### VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Russian is written in Cyrillic. The mark over a vowel (молоко́) shows the stressed syllable, the one said loudest; it is a teaching mark, not part of normal spelling. In the sound guides the stressed syllable is in capitals: mah-lah-KOH.

## чита́ть

**chee-TAHT**

verb · 1st conj.

to read (чита́ю, чита́ешь)

## знать

**znaht**

verb · 1st conj.

to know (зна́ю, зна́ешь)

## понима́ть

**puh-nee-MAHT**

verb · 1st conj.

to understand

## рабо́тать

**rah-BOH-tuht**

verb · 1st conj.

to work

## говори́ть

**guh-vah-REET**

verb · 2nd conj.

to speak (говорю́, говори́шь)

## люби́ть

**lyoo-BEET**

verb · 2nd conj.

to love (люблю́, лю́бишь)

### CORE IDEAS

**First conjugation.** Take off -ть and add the endings: чита́ть → я чита́ю, ты чита́ешь, он/она́ чита́ет, мы чита́ем, вы чита́ете, они́ чита́ют. Verbs like it: знать, понима́ть, де́лать, рабо́тать, слу́шать, отвеча́ть, гуля́ть. Что ты де́лаешь? — Я чита́ю. Вы понима́ете? — Да, понима́ю.

**Second conjugation.** Most verbs in -ить take off -ить and add: говори́ть → я говорю́, ты говори́шь, он говори́т, мы говори́м, вы говори́те, они́ говоря́т. Я говорю́ по-ру́сски. Some add an л in the я form only: люби́ть → я люблю́, ты лю́бишь, они́ лю́бят. Notice that the stress in лю́бишь moves back; learn the stress of each verb with its ты form.

**One present for three.** Russian has one present tense for I read, I am reading and I do read: Я чита́ю means all three. To say you study a subject, use изуча́ть (first conjugation): Я изуча́ю ру́сский язы́к. Jesus said: научи́тесь от Меня́, и́бо Я кро́ток и смире́н се́рдцем (learn of me; for I am meek and lowly in heart).

ACTIVITY

## Verb wheel

Make two turning verb wheels, one for each conjugation.

**You will need**

- Two paper plates per wheel
- Brass fasteners
- Markers

**Steps**

1. On the bottom plate write the six pronouns around the edge.
2. On the top plate cut a window and write the verb (чита́ть or говори́ть).
3. Turn the wheel and write the right ending for each pronoun.
4. Quiz a family member with your wheels.

**Tips**

- Make a third wheel for люби́ть with its changing stress.

**Check your work**

- ☐ Both wheels are complete and correct.
- ☐ I can conjugate both verbs without the wheel.

RUSSIAN NOTEBOOK

1. In your notebook, conjugate чита́ть, знать, рабо́тать, говори́ть and люби́ть, and write one sentence with each.

> **From history.** Russian children start first grade at about seven, and the school year begins on September 1, when pupils bring flowers to their teachers. Many schools keep the same class of pupils together for all eleven years.

> **At home in Russian.** If your student already speaks Russian, sort twenty everyday verbs into the two conjugations and mark the ones whose stress moves.

### WORKED EXAMPLES

**Example 1.** Conjugate понима́ть for мы and они́.

▼ **Show solution**

1. First conjugation: -ем, -ют.
2. Stem понима́-.

**Answer:** Мы понима́ем, они́ понима́ют.

**Example 2.** Say "Do you (formal) speak Russian?"

▼ **Show solution**

1. Говори́ть, вы form: говори́те.
2. По-ру́сски.

**Answer:** Вы говори́те по-ру́сски?

### PRACTICE

1. Easy Give the я form of чита́ть.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Чита́ю.

2. Easy Give the ты form of знать.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Зна́ешь.

3. Easy Give the они́ form of говори́ть.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Говоря́т.

4. Medium Ask a friend “What are you doing?”

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Что ты де́лаешь?

5. Medium Say “We work, and they rest (отдыха́ть).”

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Мы рабо́таем, а они́ отдыха́ют.

6. Medium Conjugate люби́ть for я, ты and они́.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Люблю́, лю́бишь, лю́бят.

7. Hard Say “I understand Russian, but I speak a little.”

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Я понима́ю по-ру́сски, но говорю́ немно́го.

8. Hard Explain why Я чита́ю can mean I read, I am reading and I do read.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Russian has only one present tense for all three English forms.

### COMMON MISTAKES

- Writing я чита́ет. Each person has its own ending: я чита́ю.
- Saying я любю́. The я form adds л: люблю́.

> **Make it a game · Verb ball.** Toss a ball and call a pronoun and a verb (мы — знать!). The catcher says the right form (зна́ем!) and tosses it back with a new pair. Three right in a row earns a point.

> **Scripture.** “Take my yoke upon you, and learn of me; for I am meek and lowly in heart: and ye shall find rest unto your souls.” (Matthew 11:29, KJV)
>
> Russian Synodal Bible (1876): *научитесь от Меня, ибо Я кроток и смирен сердцем*
> Jesus invites us to learn from Him, the gentlest and humblest of teachers.

UNIT 4 · ШКО́ЛА: SCHOOL, VERBS AND NUMBERS · LESSON 4.3 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

# 4.3 Счёт: Numbers to 100

### OBJECTIVES

- Say the numbers 0–100.
- Give a phone number in Russian.
- Do simple arithmetic aloud.

> **Warm-up.** How fast can you count to twenty in English? Today you count to a hundred in Russian and read a phone number the way Russians do.

WATCH

## How to Count in Russian?

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 6:11

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=cyuLL_m1LeE

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> after the core ideas; count along aloud.

**Note:** RussianPod101: how to count in Russian.

---

**BACKUP VIDEO**

**Learn Russian - Russian in Three Minutes - Numbers 11-100**

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 5:13

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=_yYSlKrvPro

RussianPod101: Russian in three minutes, numbers 11–100.

### KEY TERMS

**оди́н, два, три (ah-DEEN dvah tree)**
One, two, three.

**де́сять (DYEH-suht)**
Ten.

**два́дцать (DVAHD-tsuht)**
Twenty.

**со́рок (SOH-ruhk)**
Forty.

**сто (stoh)**
One hundred.

### VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Russian is written in Cyrillic. The mark over a vowel (молоко́) shows the stressed syllable, the one said loudest; it is a teaching mark, not part of normal spelling. In the sound guides the stressed syllable is in capitals: mah-lah-KOH.

## ноль
**nohl**
number
zero

## де́сять
**DYEH-suht**
number
ten

## два́дцать
**DVAHD-tsuht**
number
twenty

## со́рок
**SOH-ruhk**
number
forty

## девяно́сто
**dee-vee-NOHS-tuh**
number
ninety

## но́мер телефо́на
**NOH-meer tee-lee-FOH-nuh**
phrase
phone number

### CORE IDEAS

**0–10.** ноль, оди́н, два, три, четы́ре, пять, шесть, семь, во́семь, де́вять, де́сять. Then 11–19 add -надцать (on ten): оди́ннадцать, двена́дцать, трина́дцать,

четы́рнадцать, пятна́дцать, шестна́дцать, семна́дцать, восемна́дцать, девятна́дцать. Watch the stress: on the second syllable in оди́ннадцать and четы́рнадцать, and on -на́- in the others.

**Tens to 100.** два́дцать, три́дцать, со́рок, пятьдеся́т, шестьдеся́т, се́мьдесят, во́семьдесят, девяно́сто, сто. Forty and ninety are special. In between, put the ten first: два́дцать оди́н, три́дцать пять, девяно́сто де́вять. Arithmetic: Два плюс три — пять. Де́сять ми́нус четы́ре — шесть.

**Phone numbers.** Russians usually read a phone number in groups, often three digits and then two pairs: 495 123-45-67 is четы́реста девяно́сто пять, сто два́дцать три, со́рок пять, шестьдеся́т семь. For now, read your own number as pairs: Мой но́мер телефо́на: … Ask Како́й у тебя́ но́мер телефо́на? The psalm says God исчисля́ет коли́чество звёзд; всех их называ́ет имена́ми их: He counts the stars and calls them all by name.

ACTIVITY

## Number bingo

Make and play Russian number bingo.

**You will need**

- Paper for bingo cards
- Small counters (beans or buttons)
- Number slips 1–100

**Steps**

1. Make 5×5 cards with random numbers from 1 to 100.
2. A caller draws slips and reads each number in Russian.
3. Players cover the numbers they hear.
4. The winner reads back the line in Russian to check.

**Tips**

- Play a round where the caller says arithmetic problems instead of numbers.

**Check your work**

☐ I made a bingo card.

☐ I could call and recognize every number.

RUSSIAN NOTEBOOK

1. In your notebook, write the numbers 0–20 and the tens to 100 in words, and ten arithmetic problems in Russian with answers.

> **From history.** Russia has used the metric system since 1918. Before that, distances were measured in versts (about two-thirds of a mile) and weights in poods (about 36 pounds), words still found in Russian stories and proverbs.

> **At home in Russian.** If your student already speaks Russian, go on to hundreds (две́сти, три́ста, четы́реста, пятьсо́т) and read the full phone number in the Russian way.

### WORKED EXAMPLES

**Example 1.** Say 47.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Forty: со́рок.
2. Seven: семь.

**Answer:** Со́рок семь.

**Example 2.** Say aloud: 15 + 25 = 40.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Плюс for plus.
2. The answer after a dash: со́рок.

**Answer:** Пятна́дцать плюс два́дцать пять — со́рок.

### PRACTICE

1. Easy Count from 1 to 5.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Оди́н, два, три, четы́ре, пять.

2. Easy Say 10 and 100.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Де́сять, сто.

3. Easy Say 12.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Двена́дцать.

4. Medium Say 40 and 90.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Со́рок, девяно́сто.

5. Medium Say 33 and 58.

▼ **Show answer**

Три́дцать три, пятьдеся́т во́семь.

6. Medium Ask a friend his phone number.

▼ **Show answer**

Како́й у тебя́ но́мер телефо́на?

7. Hard Say aloud: 100 − 1 = 99.

▼ **Show answer**

Сто ми́нус оди́н — девяно́сто де́вять.

8. Hard Read 12-34-56 as pairs.

▼ **Show answer**

Двена́дцать, три́дцать четы́ре, пятьдеся́т шесть.

#### COMMON MISTAKES

- Saying четы́рдесят for 40. It is со́рок.
- Stressing одинна́дцать. The stress is оди́ннадцать.

> **Make it a game · Buzz.** Count around the circle in Russian. On every multiple of 3 or any number with 3 in it, say Бзз! instead. A mistake starts the count over at 1.

> **Scripture.** “He telleth the number of the stars; he calleth them all by their names.” (Psalm 147:4, KJV)
>
> Russian Synodal Bible (1876): *исчисляет количество звезд; всех их называет именами их* (Psalm 146:4 in the Russian numbering) God counts what no one else can count, and knows each star by name.

#### UNIT 5

## Еда́: Food and the Accusative

Lesson 5.1 teaches food and drink words and the verbs есть and пить, with Kustodiev’s tea table and the Lord’s Prayer.

Lesson 5.2 teaches the accusative case for things (-а → -у, -я → -ю; masculine and neuter unchanged) and the verb хоте́ть.

Lesson 5.3 teaches ordering in a café (Мо́жно…? Да́йте, пожа́луйста…, Ско́лько сто́ит? Счёт, пожа́луйста) and 1 Corinthians 10:31.

**PREREQUISITES**

- Unit 4: the student conjugates the two regular verb patterns and counts to 100.

**MASTERY CHECKLIST**

- ☐ I can name common foods and drinks.
- ☐ I can conjugate ес ть, пи ть and хо те́ ть.
- ☐ I can put feminine nouns in the accusative and know when masculine and neuter nouns stay the same.
- ☐ I can order food and pay in a café.

**OPTIONAL BOOKS AND RESOURCES FOR THIS UNIT**

- **Wiktionary (Russian entries)**: Free online: every Russian word with its stress, meaning, endings and often a recording by a native speaker.

Not required. Every activity in this unit works with paper, pencil, scissors and the free links below. School Launch is independent and free.

**LESSONS IN THIS UNIT**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 5.1 | **Я ем, я пью: Food and Drink** | 4 sessions of 40–50 minutes |
| 5.2 | **Я хочу́ ка́шу: The Accusative Case** | 4 sessions of 40–50 minutes |

# Unit 5 test

Questions 1–2 are oral: the parent asks and marks. The rest are written, without notes. 50 points.

1. **5 pts**
   Oral: Order a meal in a café: a soup, a main dish and a drink, then ask for the bill.

2. **5 pts**
   Oral: Tell what you eat and drink for breakfast.

3. **5 pts**
   Conjugate есть in the present.

4. **5 pts**
   Conjugate пить in the present.

5. **5 pts**
   Conjugate хоте́ть in the present.

6. **5 pts**
   Put in the accusative: вода́, ка́ша, суп, молоко́.

7. **5 pts**
   Translate: I want tea and soup. She drinks water.

8. **5 pts**
   Translate: How much does the pie cost?

9. **5 pts**
   Name three Russian dishes and say what they are.

10. **5 pts**

Write Matthew 6:11 in Russian.

**ANSWER KEY**

1. Да́йте, пожа́луйста, борщ, котле́ту и чай. … Счёт, пожа́луйста.
2. На за́втрак я ем ка́шу и пью чай (any accurate answer).
3. Ем, ешь, ест, еди́м, еди́те, едя́т.
4. Пью, пьёшь, пьёт, пьём, пьёте, пьют.
5. Хочу́, хо́чешь, хо́чет, хоти́м, хоти́те, хотя́т.
6. Во́ду, ка́шу, суп, молоко́.
7. Я хочу́ чай и суп. Она́ пьёт во́ду.
8. Ско́лько сто́ит пиро́г?
9. For example: борщ (beet soup), щи (cabbage soup), блины́ (thin pancakes), пельме́ни (dumplings), ка́ша (porridge).
10. Хлеб наш насу́щный дай нам на сей день.

Printable answer key (PDF, for the parent)

**UNIT CHALLENGE: CAFÉ RUSSIA**

Design a Russian café menu (at least twelve items with prices in rubles) and act out a full visit with a family member as waiter: greeting, ordering, a question about the menu, and paying. Record or perform it.

| LOOK FOR | WHAT IT MEANS |
|---|---|
| **Speaking** | The student carries the café scene in Russian. |
| **Accuracy** | Accusative endings, verbs and numbers are correct. |
| **Product** | The menu is complete and attractive. |
| **Effort** | The work is careful, complete and on time. |

# 5.1 Я ем, я пью: Food and Drink

**OBJECTIVES**

- Name common foods and drinks.
- Conjugate есть and пить.
- Look closely at Merchant's Wife at Tea.

> **Warm-up.** What did you eat today? What did you drink? Today you learn the Russian words for food and the two verbs you use at every meal.

**WATCH**

## Weekly Russian Words with Katya - Food

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 2:04

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=ddvtnfMH-Xs

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> after the core ideas; write down every food word you hear.

**Note:** RussianPod101: Weekly Words with Katya, food.

---

**BACKUP VIDEO**

**Learn the Top 10 Russian Foods**

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 5:00

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=u-__Z2ctqe4

RussianPod101: the top ten Russian foods.

**KEY TERMS**

**хлеб (khlyehp)**
Bread.

**суп (soop)**
Soup.

**ка́ша (KAH-shuh)**
Porridge, cooked grain.

**чай, ко́фе (chahy KOH-fee)**
Tea, coffee.

**за́втрак, обе́д, у́жин (ZAHVT-ruhk ah-BYEHT OO-zhihn)**

Breakfast, lunch (the main meal), supper.

### VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Russian is written in Cyrillic. The mark over a vowel (молоко́) shows the stressed syllable, the one said loudest; it is a teaching mark, not part of normal spelling. In the sound guides the stressed syllable is in capitals: mah-lah-KOH.

## хлеб

**khlyehp**

noun · masculine

bread

## суп

**soop**

noun · masculine

soup

## ка́ша

**KAH-shuh**

noun · feminine

porridge

## есть

**yehst**

verb · irregular

to eat (ем, ешь, ест)

## пить

**peet**

verb

to drink (пью, пьёшь)

## обе́д

**ah-BYEHT**

noun · masculine

lunch, main meal

### CORE IDEAS

**The story.** Boris Kustodiev painted the merchant's wife in 1918, when he was ill and confined to a wheelchair, remembering the sunny towns of the Volga from his youth. She sits on a balcony at a table loaded with good things: a shining самова́р for tea, a cut watermelon, apples, grapes and pastries, while a cat rubs against her shoulder and churches glow in the evening light behind. Russians drink tea from glasses or cups, often with jam or lemon, and a samovar keeps the water hot for hours.

**Food words.** хлеб (bread), ма́сло (butter), сыр (cheese), мя́со (meat), ры́ба (fish), карто́шка (potatoes), суп (soup), ка́ша (porridge), я́блоко (apple). Drinks: вода́, молоко́, сок, чай, ко́фе. Russian favorites: борщ (beet soup), щи (cabbage soup), блины́ (thin pancakes), пельме́ни (dumplings).

**Есть and пить.** Both are irregular: есть → я ем, ты ешь, он ест, мы еди́м, вы еди́те, они́ едя́т; пить → я пью, ты пьёшь, он пьёт, мы пьём, вы пьёте, они́ пьют. Meals: за́втрак (breakfast), обе́д (the main meal, at midday), у́жин (supper). Before eating, Russian believers often pray the Lord's Prayer: Хлеб наш насу́щный дай нам на сей день.

PICTURE STUDY



*Merchant's Wife at Tea*, Boris Kustodiev, 1918 · Oil on canvas · State Russian Museum, St. Petersburg

Image: Wikimedia Commons, public domain

Kustodiev painted this bright, cheerful picture in a hungry and hard year, from memory and imagination. He loved the old provincial towns of Russia and filled his paintings with their color.

**Look closely**

- Name every food and drink you can see, in Russian if you can.
- What is the shining metal object, and what is it for?
- Find the cat. What is it doing?
- What is in the background?

**Talk about it**

1. Why might a painter paint a feast in a year of hunger?
2. What foods does your family eat on special days?

ACTIVITY

## Russian tea

Set a Russian tea table with your family.

**You will need**

- Tea, glasses or cups
- Jam, lemon, bread or simple pastries

**Steps**

1. Set the table and label each item in Russian.
2. Serve tea the Russian way, with jam or lemon.
3. Offer each guest: Хоти́те чай? Вот хлеб.
4. Talk about what everyone eats and drinks, in Russian.

**Tips**

- Make simple блины́ with a parent and serve them with jam.

**Check your work**

☐ Every item was labeled in Russian.

☐ I used

ec and

ть

п correctly.

ит

ь

RUSSIAN NOTEBOOK

1. In your notebook, write fifteen food and drink words and conjugate есть and пить, with a sentence for each person.

> **From history.** Bread has a special place in Russian life. Guests of honor are greeted with хлеб-соль, a round loaf with salt on top, and the proverb says Хлеб всему́ голова́: Bread is the head of everything.

> **At home in Russian.** If your student already speaks Russian, write out a family recipe in Russian and cook it together.

### WORKED EXAMPLES

**Example 1.** Say “We eat soup, and they eat porridge.”

▼ **Show solution**

1. Есть: мы еди́м, они́ едя́т.
2. Суп and ка́ша after the verb: суп stays, ка́ша → ка́шу (accusative, next lesson).

**Answer:** Мы еди́м суп, а они́ едя́т ка́шу.

**Example 2.** Say “Do you drink coffee?” to a friend.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Пить: ты пьёшь.
2. Ко́фе never changes.

**Answer:** Ты пьёшь ко́фе?

### PRACTICE

1. Easy Give the Russian for bread and cheese.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Хлеб, сыр.

2. Easy Give the Russian for water and milk.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Вода́, молоко́.

3. Easy Say “I eat.”

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Я ем.

4. Medium Say “He drinks tea.”

▼ **Show answer**

Он пьёт чай.

5. Medium Conjugate есть for мы, вы, они́.

▼ **Show answer**

Еди́м, еди́те, едя́т.

6. Medium What are борщ and блины́?

▼ **Show answer**

Beet soup; thin pancakes.

7. Hard Describe your breakfast in two sentences.

▼ **Show answer**

На за́втрак я ем хлеб и сыр. Я пью чай.

8. Hard Say “What do you (formal) drink at lunch?”

▼ **Show answer**

Что вы пьёте за обе́дом?

### COMMON MISTAKES

- Conjugating есть like a regular verb. It is irregular: ем, ешь, ест.
- Confusing есть (to eat) with есть (there is). Context tells: Я ем; У меня́ есть хлеб.

> **Make it a game · Restaurant memory.** The first player says Я ем хлеб. The next repeats and adds: Я ем хлеб и сыр. Keep adding foods. Anyone who forgets an item or makes a mistake drops out.

> **Scripture.** “Give us this day our daily bread.” (Matthew 6:11, KJV)
>
> Russian Synodal Bible (1876): *хлеб наш насущный дай нам на сей день* Jesus teaches us to ask God for our bread each day, and to thank Him for it.

# 5.2 Я хочу́ ка́шу: The Accusative Case

**OBJECTIVES**

- Put feminine nouns in the accusative.
- Know that masculine and neuter things do not change.
- Conjugate хоте́ть.

> **Warm-up.** Say Я люблю́ ма́ма. Something is wrong! When a noun is the object of a verb, Russian changes its ending. Today you learn the first and easiest case.

**WATCH**

## Learn How to Voice Your Choices in Russian | Daily Russian Conversations #07

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 4:08

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Foqv5dBzCeA

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> after the core ideas; listen for objects after хочу́ and люблю́.

**Note:** RussianPod101 Daily Russian Conversations: how to say what you choose.

---

**BACKUP VIDEO**

### Weekly Russian Words with Katya - Drinks

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 2:43

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=IKwRFWa_S1I

RussianPod101: Weekly Words with Katya, drinks. Parents: the list includes beer (пи́во) and the host mentions vodka.

**KEY TERMS**

**хоте́ть (khah-TYEHT)**
To want.

**Я хочу́… (yah khah-CHOO)**
I want….

**Я люблю́… (yah lyoob-LYOO)**

I love..., I like... (things).

**во́ду, ка́шу (VOH-doo KAH-shoo)**

Water, porridge (as objects).

**Что ты хо́чешь? (shtoh tih KHOH-cheesh)**

What do you want?

### VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Russian is written in Cyrillic. The mark over a vowel (молоко́) shows the stressed syllable, the one said loudest; it is a teaching mark, not part of normal spelling. In the sound guides the stressed syllable is in capitals: mah-lah-KOH.

## хоте́ть

**khah-TYEHT**

verb · irregular

to want (хочу́, хо́чешь, хоти́м)

## ры́ба

**RIH-buh**

noun · feminine

fish (ры́бу)

## мя́со

**MYAH-suh**

noun · neuter

meat

## сок

**sohk**

noun · masculine

juice

## карто́шка

**kahr-TOHSH-kuh**

noun · feminine

potatoes

## соль

**sohl**

noun · feminine

salt

### CORE IDEAS

**The accusative.** The noun that receives the action is in the accusative case. Feminine nouns in -a change to -у, and in -я to -ю: вода́ → Я пью во́ду. ка́ша → Я ем ка́шу. ды́ня → Я хочу́ ды́ню. Feminine nouns in -ь do not change: Я люблю́ соль. Masculine and neuter things do not change either: Я ем суп. Я пью молоко́.

**Хоте́ть.** This verb mixes the two patterns: я хочу́, ты хо́чешь, он хо́чет, мы хоти́м, вы хоти́те, они́ хотя́т. Use it with a noun or a verb: Я хочу́ ры́бу. Я хочу́ есть. (I

want fish. I am hungry, literally I want to eat.) Politely: Я хоте́л бы… / Я хоте́ла бы… (I would like).

**Love and like.** Я люблю́ + accusative means I love or I really like: Я люблю́ ма́му. Я люблю́ пи́ццу. For people, masculine nouns change too, as you will see later; for now learn Я люблю́ па́пу, бра́та, Бо́га as phrases. Jesus said Я есмь хлеб жи́зни (I am the bread of life): хлеб is the subject here, so it does not change.

ACTIVITY

### Grocery store

Set up a pretend grocery store at home.

**You will need**

- Real or pretend food items
- Price tags
- Play money

**Steps**

1. Label twelve food items in Russian.
2. One person is the shopkeeper, one the customer.
3. The customer says what he wants with the accusative: Я хочу́ ры́бу и молоко́.
4. Switch roles and buy something different.

**Tips**

- Add a polite request: Я хоте́л(а) бы….

**Check your work**

- ☐ I named twelve items.
- ☐ My accusative endings were right.

RUSSIAN NOTEBOOK

1. In your notebook, write ten sentences with хочу́, люблю́, ем or пью, half with feminine objects.

> **From history.** Ка́ша, porridge of buckwheat, oats or millet, is one of the oldest Russian foods. The proverb Щи да ка́ша — пи́ща на́ша (Cabbage soup and porridge are our food) shows how simple and important it was.

> **At home in Russian.** If your student already speaks Russian, learn the accusative of people and animals now (бра́та, отца́, соба́ку) and compare with things.

### WORKED EXAMPLES

**Example 1.** Say “I want a fish.”

▼ **Show solution**

1. Ры́ба is feminine in -a.
2. -а → -у.

**Answer:** Я хочу́ ры́бу.

**Example 2.** Say “She loves milk and cheese.”

▼ **Show solution**

1. Молоко́ (neuter) and сыр (masculine) do not change.
2. Люби́ть: она́ лю́бит.

**Answer:** Она́ лю́бит молоко́ и сыр.

### PRACTICE

1. Easy Put вода́ in the accusative.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Во́ду.

2. Easy Say “I want tea.”

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Я хочу́ чай.

3. Easy Give the ты form of хоте́ть.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Хо́чешь.

4. Medium Say “We want porridge.”

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Мы хоти́м ка́шу.

5. Medium Say “They eat meat and potatoes.”

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Они́ едя́т мя́со и карто́шку.

6. Medium Why does суп not change after ем?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   It is a masculine thing; masculine and neuter things do not change in the accusative.

7. Hard Say politely “I would like a pie” (as yourself).

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Я хоте́л бы пиро́г. / Я хоте́ла бы пиро́г.

8. Hard Say “I am hungry and want soup.”

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Я хочу́ есть. Я хочу́ суп.

### COMMON MISTAKES

- Saying Я пью вода́. The object takes the accusative: во́ду.
- Saying мы хо́чем. The plural uses the other pattern: хоти́м.

> **Make it a game · I want, you want.** Each player gets four picture cards of food. Ask another: Ты хо́чешь ры́бу? If he has it, he answers Да, хочу́! and hands it over; if not, Нет, не хочу́! Most cards wins.

> **Scripture.** “And Jesus said unto them, I am the bread of life: he that cometh to me shall never hunger; and he that believeth on me shall never thirst.” (John 6:35, KJV)
>
> Russian Synodal Bible (1876): *Я есмь хлеб жизни; приходящий ко Мне не будет алкать* Jesus feeds the soul as bread feeds the body. Whoever comes to Him will never hunger.

UNIT 5 · ЕДА́: FOOD AND THE ACCUSATIVE · LESSON 5.3 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

# 5.3 В кафе́: At the Café

**OBJECTIVES**

- Order food and drink politely.
- Ask the price and pay.
- Learn 1 Corinthians 10:31.

> **Warm-up.** Imagine you are in a café in Moscow. What will you need to say? Today you learn everything for a visit, from Здра́вствуйте to the bill.

WATCH

## Learn the Top 10 Must-Know Vocabulary for the Restaurant in Russian

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 3:54

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=nexOoJ0zzbY

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> after the core ideas; pause and order after the speakers.

**Note:** RussianPod101: the top restaurant words.

---

**BACKUP VIDEO**

### Russian Beginner Reading Practice - Having Lunch at a Restaurant

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 1:18

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=4UpMLYyb2MM

RussianPod101: a short beginner reading, having lunch at a restaurant.

**KEY TERMS**

**меню́ (mee-NYOO)**
Menu.

**Мо́жно…? (MOHZH-nuh)**
May I have...? May I...?

**Счёт, пожа́луйста. (shchoht pah-ZHAH-looys-tuh)**
The bill, please.

**Да́йте, пожа́луйста… (DAHY-tee pah-ZHAH-looys-tuh)**
Please give me....

**Ско́лько сто́ит? (SKOHL-kuh STOH-eet)**
How much does it cost?

**VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK**

Russian is written in Cyrillic. The mark over a vowel (молоко́) shows the stressed syllable, the one said loudest; it is a teaching mark, not part of normal spelling. In the sound guides the stressed syllable is in capitals: mah-lah-KOH.

## меню́

**mee-NYOO**

noun · neuter (never changes)

menu

## официа́нт

**ah-fee-tsih-AHNT**

noun · masculine

waiter; официа́нтка (waitress)

## счёт

**shchoht**

noun · masculine

bill, check

## рубль

**roobl**

noun · masculine

ruble (рубля́, рубле́й)

## вку́сно

**VKOOS-nuh**

adverb

delicious, tasty

## Мо́жно...?

**MOHZH-nuh**

phrase

May I (have)...?

### CORE IDEAS

**Ordering.** Ask for the menu: Мо́жно меню́? Order with Да́йте, пожа́луйста... (Please give me...) or Я бу́ду... (I will have...) plus the accusative: Да́йте, пожа́луйста, борщ и котле́ту. Ask Что вы рекоменду́ете? (What do you recommend?). The waiter, официа́нт or официа́нтка, may ask Что бу́дете пить? (What will you drink?)

**Paying.** Ask the price with Ско́лько сто́ит? and the answer comes in rubles: Сто рубле́й. (one ruble is рубль, 2–4 рубля́, 5 and up рубле́й). At the end: Счёт, пожа́луйста. (The bill, please.) and Спаси́бо, всё бы́ло о́чень вку́сно! (Thank you, everything was delicious!)

**The menu.** A Russian café menu often has сала́ты (salads), супы́ (soups), горя́чие блю́да (hot dishes), десе́рты and напи́тки (drinks). Before a meal Russians say Прия́тного аппети́та! (Enjoy your meal!). The apostle Paul wrote that whether we eat or drink, we should do all to the glory of God: е́дите ли, пьёте ли... всё де́лайте в сла́ву Бо́жию.

ACTIVITY

## A café menu

Design a menu for a Russian café.

**You will need**

- Card stock folded in half
- Markers, pictures

**Steps**

1. Divide the menu into сала́ты, супы́, горя́чие блю́да, десе́рты and напи́тки.
2. Write at least twelve items with prices in rubles.
3. Decorate the cover with the café's Russian name.
4. Use the menu to order from a family member.

**Tips**

- Add a daily special: Сего́дня….

**Check your work**

☐ My menu has five sections and twelve items.

☐ I ordered from it in Russian.

RUSSIAN NOTEBOOK

1. In your notebook, write a full café dialogue of at least ten lines, from the greeting to the bill.

> **From history.** A Russian столо́вая is a simple, inexpensive cafeteria where people eat a hot lunch of soup, a main dish and kompot, a drink of stewed fruit. Many workplaces and schools still have one.

> **At home in Russian.** If your student already speaks Russian, visit a Russian bakery or store if there is one nearby and order in Russian.

### WORKED EXAMPLES

**Example 1.** Order borscht and tea.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Да́йте, пожа́луйста…
2. Борщ and чай do not change.

**Answer:** Да́йте, пожа́луйста, борщ и чай.

**Example 2.** Ask the price of a salad and understand “eighty rubles.”

▼ **Show solution**

1. Ско́лько сто́ит сала́т?
2. Eighty + рубле́й.

**Answer:** Ско́лько сто́ит сала́т? — Во́семьдесят рубле́й.

### PRACTICE

1. Easy Ask for the menu.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Мо́жно меню́?

2. Easy Ask for the bill.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Счёт, пожа́луйста.

3. Easy Say “Enjoy your meal!”

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Прия́тного аппети́та!

4. Medium Order a pie and juice.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Да́йте, пожа́луйста, пиро́г и сок.

5. Medium Ask “What do you recommend?”

▼ **Show answer**

Что вы рекоменду́ете?

6. Medium Say 1 ruble, 3 rubles, 50 rubles.

▼ **Show answer**

Оди́н рубль, три рубля́, пятьдеся́т рубле́й.

7. Hard Order a porridge and water with Я бу́ду.

▼ **Show answer**

Я бу́ду ка́шу и во́ду.

8. Hard Thank the waiter and say everything was delicious.

▼ **Show answer**

Спаси́бо, всё бы́ло о́чень вку́сно!

### COMMON MISTAKES

- Ordering with Я хочу́ to a waiter. It can sound abrupt; Да́йте, пожа́луйста or Я бу́ду is more polite.
- Saying пять рубля́. After 5 and up: пять рубле́й.

> **Make it a game · Waiter!.** One player is the waiter with a menu. The others order in Russian. The waiter must write down every order correctly in Cyrillic and bring the bill with the total in rubles. Switch roles.

> **Scripture.** “Whether therefore ye eat, or drink, or whatsoever ye do, do all to the glory of God.” (1 Corinthians 10:31, KJV)
>
> Russian Synodal Bible (1876): *едите ли, пьете ли или иное что делаете, все делайте в славу Божию* Even ordinary things like eating and drinking can be done for the glory of God, with thanks.

### UNIT 6

# Го́род: The Town and the Prepositional

Lesson 6.1 teaches places in town, Где ты живёшь? and the prepositional case after в and на, with Polenov's Moscow courtyard.

Lesson 6.2 teaches идти́ (on foot) and е́хать (by vehicle), куда́? with в/на + accusative, and на авто́бусе, на метро́.

Lesson 6.3 teaches directions (напра́во, нале́во, пря́мо), Как пройти́...? and Jesus' words I am the way.

**PREREQUISITES**

- Unit 5: the student knows the accusative of things.

**MASTERY CHECKLIST**

- ☐ I can name places in a town.
- ☐ I can say where something is with в or на and the prepositional.
- ☐ I can tell идти́ from е́хать and say where I am going.
- ☐ I can ask for and give simple directions.

**OPTIONAL BOOKS AND RESOURCES FOR THIS UNIT**

- **Wiktionary (Russian entries)**: Free online: every Russian word with its stress, meaning, endings and often a recording by a native speaker.

Not required. Every activity in this unit works with paper, pencil, scissors and the free links below. School Launch is independent and free.

**LESSONS IN THIS UNIT**


6.1 **Где ты живёшь? Places and the Prepositional** — 4 sessions of 40–50 minutes

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 6.2 | **Я иду́, я е́ду: Going Places** | 4 sessions of 40–50 minutes |
| 6.3 | **Как пройти́…? Directions** | 4 sessions of 40–50 minutes |

## Unit 6 test

Questions 1–2 are oral: the parent asks and marks. The rest are written, without notes. 50 points.

1. **5 pts**
   Oral: Say where you live and where you go on Sunday, and how you get there.

2. **5 pts**
   Oral: Ask how to get to the post office, and give directions to a place near your home.

3. **5 pts**
   Put in the prepositional after в: шко́ла, го́род, Москва́.

4. **5 pts**
   В or на? … по́чте, … магази́не, … рабо́те, … па́рке.

5. **5 pts**
   Conjugate жить in the present.

6. **5 pts**
   Conjugate идти́ and е́хать for я and они́.

7. **5 pts**
   Идти́ or е́хать? to school on foot; to Moscow by train.

8. **5 pts**
   Где or куда́? … ты живёшь? … ты идёшь?

9. **5 pts**
   Translate: Go straight, then left. The bank is on the right.

10. **5 pts**

Translate John 14:6a from Russian: Я есмь путь, и и́стина, и жизнь.

**ANSWER KEY**

1. Я живу́ в…. В воскресе́нье я е́ду в це́рковь на маши́не (any accurate answer).
2. Как пройти́ на по́чту? … Иди́те пря́мо, пото́м напра́во (any accurate directions).
3. В шко́ле, в го́роде, в Москве́.
4. На по́чте, в магази́не, на рабо́те, в па́рке.
5. Живу́, живёшь, живёт, живём, живёте, живу́т.
6. Иду́, иду́т; е́ду, е́дут.
7. Я иду́ в шко́лу. Я е́ду в Москву́ на по́езде.
8. Где; куда́.
9. Иди́те пря́мо, пото́м нале́во. Банк спра́ва.
10. I am the way, the truth, and the life.

Printable answer key (PDF, for the parent)

**UNIT CHALLENGE: MY TOWN**

Draw a map of your town or neighborhood with ten places labeled in Russian. Write and present a short tour: where each place is, how you get there (идти́ or е́хать), and directions from your home to two of them.

| LOOK FOR | WHAT IT MEANS |
|---|---|
| **Speaking** | The student presents the tour and gives directions aloud. |
| **Accuracy** | Prepositional endings, verbs of motion and directions are correct. |
| **Product** | The map is complete and labeled in Russian. |
| **Effort** | The work is careful, complete and on time. |

# 6.1 Где ты живёшь? Places and the Prepositional

**OBJECTIVES**

- Name places in town.
- Say where with в or на and the prepositional.
- Look closely at Moscow Courtyard.

> **Warm-up.** Name five places in your town. Where do you live? Where do you go to church? Today you learn to answer Где? (where) in Russian.

**WATCH**

### Russian Words of the Week with Katya - Buildings

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 4:03

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=j3xKdx1d7rE

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> after the core ideas; say Где? for each building.

**Note:** RussianPod101: Words of the Week with Katya, buildings.

---

**BACKUP VIDEO**

### Learn Prepositions That Will Make You Sound More Fluent in Russian | Daily Russian Conversations #09

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 4:09

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=l0WwrKkkUUI

RussianPod101 Daily Russian Conversations: useful prepositions. Parents: the dialogue is set in a café and the words include beer (пи́во), draught and bottle.

**KEY TERMS**

**го́род (GOH-ruht)**
City, town.

**жить (zhiht)**
To live (живу́, живёшь).

**в, на (v nah)**

In, at, on (+ prepositional for where).

**магази́н (muh-gah-ZEEN)**

Store.

**це́рковь (TSEHR-kuhf)**

Church.

### VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Russian is written in Cyrillic. The mark over a vowel (молоко́) shows the stressed syllable, the one said loudest; it is a teaching mark, not part of normal spelling. In the sound guides the stressed syllable is in capitals: mah-lah-KOH.

## го́род

**GOH-ruht**

noun · masculine

city, town (в го́роде)

## у́лица

**OO-lee-tsuh**

noun · feminine

street (на у́лице)

## магази́н

**muh-gah-ZEEN**

noun · masculine

store

## по́чта

**POHCH-tuh**

noun · feminine

post office (на по́чте)

## це́рковь

**TSEHR-kuhf**

noun · feminine

church (в це́ркви)

## жить

**zhiht**

verb

to live (живу́, живёшь)

### CORE IDEAS

**The story.** In 1877 the young painter Vasily Polenov rented an apartment in an old part of Moscow, and from his window he painted what he saw: a grassy courtyard on a summer morning, children playing, a woman carrying a bucket, a horse waiting with its cart, wooden houses, and over the trees the domes and bell tower of a church. Moscow was then a city of quiet lanes, gardens and more than four hundred churches. The painting, shown in 1878, was loved because it showed an ordinary corner of the city with such peace.

**Places.** дом (house), кварти́ра (apartment), у́лица (street), шко́ла, магази́н (store), рестора́н, по́чта (post office), банк, больни́ца (hospital), библиоте́ка (library), парк, це́рковь (church), вокза́л (station). Жить (to live): я живу́, ты живёшь, он живёт, мы живём, вы живёте, они́ живу́т.

**The prepositional.** To say where, use в (in) or на (on, at) and the prepositional case. Most nouns take -е: шко́ла → в шко́ле, го́род → в го́роде, Москва́ → в Москве́, окно́ → на окне́. Nouns in -ия and -ь (feminine) take -и: Росси́я → в Росси́и, це́рковь → в це́ркви. Some places take на and must be learned: на по́чте, на рабо́те, на вокза́ле, на у́лице, на конце́рте. Где ты живёшь? — Я живу́ в Аме́рике, в го́роде….

PICTURE STUDY



*Moscow Courtyard*, Vasily Polenov, 1878 · Oil on canvas · State Tretyakov Gallery, Moscow

Image: Wikimedia Commons, public domain

Polenov painted the courtyard from the window of his apartment in the Arbat district. The same year he painted the neighboring house and its garden in Grandmother's Garden, also in the Tretyakov Gallery.

**Look closely**

- What buildings can you find?
- What are the people doing?
- Find the horse. What is it waiting for?
- What time of day and year is it?

**Talk about it**

1. Is this a quiet or a busy place? What makes it so?
2. What would you see from your own window?

ACTIVITY

## Map of my town

Draw a simple map of your town or neighborhood in Russian.

**You will need**

- Large paper
- Colored pencils

**Steps**

1. Draw your street and ten nearby places.
2. Label each in Russian with stress marks.
3. Write a sentence for each place where a person is: Па́па на рабо́те. Ма́ма в магази́не.
4. Present your map.

**Tips**

- Add your church and say what happens there in Russian.

**Check your work**

☐ My map has ten labeled places.

☐ Each sentence uses в or на correctly.

RUSSIAN NOTEBOOK

1. In your notebook, write fifteen places with their prepositional forms (в шко́ле, на по́чте) and five sentences about where your family members are now.

> **From history.** Moscow grew in rings around the Kremlin, the old walled fortress at its heart, with the boulevards and later the Garden Ring marking where the old walls once stood. The Arbat, where Polenov lived, is one of the oldest streets of the city.

> **At home in Russian.** If your student already speaks Russian, learn the prepositional with о (about): Я ду́маю о ма́ме, and the special forms в лесу́, в саду́, на мосту́.

### WORKED EXAMPLES

**Example 1.** Say "I live in Russia."

▼ **Show solution**

1. Росси́я ends in -ия: -ии.
2. В + prepositional.

**Answer:** Я живу́ в Росси́и.

**Example 2.** Say "Papa is at work, and Mama is at the store."

▼ **Show solution**

1. Рабо́та takes на.
2. Магази́н takes в.

**Answer:** Па́па на рабо́те, а ма́ма в магази́не.

### PRACTICE

1. Easy Give the Russian for store and library.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Магази́н, библиоте́ка.

2. Easy Say "in school."

   ▼ **Show answer**

   В шко́ле.

3. Easy Ask a friend "Where do you live?"

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Где ты живёшь?

4. Medium Say “in the city” and “in Moscow.”

▼ **Show answer**

В го́роде, в Москве́.

5. Medium Say “at the post office” and “at the station.”

▼ **Show answer**

На по́чте, на вокза́ле.

6. Medium Conjugate жить for мы and они́.

▼ **Show answer**

Живём, живу́т.

7. Hard Say “We live in an apartment on Pushkin Street.”

▼ **Show answer**

Мы живём в кварти́ре на у́лице Пу́шкина.

8. Hard Say “On Sunday we are in church.”

▼ **Show answer**

В воскресе́нье мы в це́ркви.

### COMMON MISTAKES

- Saying в по́чте. Some places take на: на по́чте.
- Forgetting -и for nouns in -ия: в Росси́и, not в Росси́е.

> **Make it a game · Где он?.** Hide a small toy figure in different places in a dollhouse or on a map. The others ask Он в шко́ле? Он на по́чте? until they find it. The finder answers with the full sentence: Он в библиоте́ке!

> **Scripture.** “Ye are the light of the world. A city that is set on an hill cannot be hid.” (Matthew 5:14, KJV)
>
> Russian Synodal Bible (1876): *Не может укрыться город, стоящий на верху горы* A city on a hill shines for all to see. Christians are to shine with good works wherever they live.

# 6.2 Я иду́, я е́ду: Going Places

**OBJECTIVES**

- Use идти́ for going on foot and е́хать for going by vehicle.
- Say where you are going with в/на + accusative.
- Name kinds of transport.

> **Warm-up.** In English you go to school whether you walk or ride. Russian makes you choose a verb. Today you learn the two most important verbs of motion.

**WATCH**

## Top 10 Phrases to Survive at the Station in Russian

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 6:16

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=0jURHgzZVmg

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> after the core ideas; note every verb of going you hear.

**Note:** RussianPod101: the top phrases for the train station.

---

**BACKUP VIDEO**

**Russian Absolute Beginner Reading Practice - Searching for a Bus Service**

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 1:09

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=T_rA6lVgpo4

RussianPod101: a short beginner reading, searching for a bus service.

**KEY TERMS**

**идти́ (eed-TEE)**
To go on foot (иду́, идёшь).

**е́хать (YEH-khuht)**
To go by vehicle (е́ду, е́дешь).

**Куда́? (koo-DAH)**

Where to?

**на авто́бусе (nah ahv-TOH-boo-see)**

By bus.

**пешко́м (peesh-KOHM)**

On foot.

### VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Russian is written in Cyrillic. The mark over a vowel (молоко́) shows the stressed syllable, the one said loudest; it is a teaching mark, not part of normal spelling. In the sound guides the stressed syllable is in capitals: mah-lah-KOH.

## идти́

**eed-TEE**

verb

to go on foot (иду́, идёшь)

## е́хать

**YEH-khuht**

verb

to go by vehicle (е́ду, е́дешь)

## куда́

**koo-DAH**

question word

where to

## домо́й

**dah-MOHY**

adverb

home (direction)

## авто́бус

**ahv-TOH-boos**

noun · masculine

bus

## пешко́м

**peesh-KOHM**

adverb

on foot

### CORE IDEAS

**Two verbs.** Идти́ is to go on foot: я иду́, ты идёшь, он идёт, мы идём, вы идёте, они́ иду́т. Е́хать is to go by any vehicle: я е́ду, ты е́дешь, он е́дет, мы е́дем, вы е́дете, они́ е́дут. Я иду́ в шко́лу. (I am walking to school.) Мы е́дем в Москву́. (We are going to Moscow, by car or train.) These verbs mean going now, in one direction.

**Where to?** Где? (where) takes the prepositional; Куда́? (where to) takes the accusative after the same в or на: Где ты? — В шко́ле. Куда́ ты идёшь? — В шко́лу. Я

е́ду на рабо́ту. Мы идём на по́чту. Home is special: Где ты? — До́ма. Куда́ ты идёшь? — Домо́й.

**Transport.** на авто́бусе, на маши́не, на по́езде, на метро́, на велосипе́де (by bus, car, train, metro, bicycle), all with на + prepositional; on foot is пешко́м. Я е́ду в це́рковь на маши́не. The Moscow metro, opened in 1935, is famous for its stations decorated with marble, mosaics and chandeliers. The psalm promises: Госпо́дь бу́дет охраня́ть выхожде́ние твоё и вхожде́ние твоё, the Lord shall preserve thy going out and thy coming in.

ACTIVITY

## Transport survey

Find out how your family and friends get to five places.

**You will need**

- Chart paper
- Markers

**Steps**

1. Choose five places: шко́ла, рабо́та, це́рковь, магази́н, па́рк.
2. Ask: Как ты е́дешь…? / Ты идёшь пешко́м?
3. Record the answers in a chart.
4. Write five sentences: Па́па е́дет на рабо́ту на маши́не.

**Tips**

- Make a bar graph of the kinds of transport.

**Check your work**

☐ I asked about five places.

☐ Each sentence uses

ид or

ти́

е́х correctly.

ат

ь

RUSSIAN NOTEBOOK

1. In your notebook, conjugate идти́ and е́хать, and write eight sentences about where people are going and how.

> **From history.** The Trans-Siberian Railway, finished in the early 1900s, runs about 5,770 miles from Moscow to Vladivostok on the Pacific, the longest railway line in the world; the trip takes about a week.

> **At home in Russian.** If your student already speaks Russian, learn the pair ходи́ть/е́здить for repeated or round trips: Я хожу́ в шко́лу ка́ждый день.

### WORKED EXAMPLES

**Example 1.** Say "I am walking home."

▼ **Show solution**

1. On foot: идти́.
2. Home (direction): домо́й.

**Answer:** Я иду́ домо́й.

**Example 2.** Say "They are going to the park by bicycle."

▼ **Show solution**

1. Vehicle: е́хать, они́ е́дут.
2. В парк (accusative), на велосипе́де.

**Answer:** Они́ е́дут в парк на велосипе́де.

### PRACTICE

1. Easy Give the я form of идти́.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Иду́.

2. Easy Give the я form of е́хать.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Е́ду.

3. Easy Ask "Where are you going?"

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Куда́ ты идёшь?

4. Medium Say “We are going to school by bus.”

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Мы е́дем в шко́лу на авто́бусе.

5. Medium Say “She is walking to the store.”

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Она́ идёт в магази́н.

6. Medium Где or куда́? … вы живёте? … вы е́дете?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Где; куда́.

7. Hard Say “Papa is going to work by metro, and I walk to school.”

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Па́па е́дет на рабо́ту на метро́, а я иду́ в шко́лу пешко́м.

8. Hard Explain the difference between в шко́ле and в шко́лу.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   В шко́ле (prepositional) is where: in school. В шко́лу (accusative) is where to: to school.

### COMMON MISTAKES

- Using идти́ for a trip by car. By vehicle use е́хать.
- Answering Куда́? with the prepositional. Куда́? takes the accusative: в шко́лу.

> **Make it a game · Walk or ride?.** A parent names a trip in English (to the kitchen, to Moscow, to Grandma’s house in another state, to the mailbox). The student answers with a full Russian sentence using идти́ or е́хать and the right case. A correct sentence earns a step forward on a game board.

> **Scripture.** “The LORD shall preserve thy going out and thy coming in from this time forth, and even for evermore.” (Psalm 121:8, KJV)
>
> Russian Synodal Bible (1876): *Господь будет охранять выхождение твое и вхождение твое* (Psalm 120:8 in the Russian numbering) Wherever we go and whenever we come home, God keeps watch over us.

# 6.3 Как пройти́...? DIRECTIONS

### OBJECTIVES

- Ask for directions politely.
- Give simple directions.
- Learn John 14:6.

> **Warm-up.** You are lost in a Russian town and need the post office. What do you say? Today you learn to ask the way and understand the answer.

### WATCH

## Weekly Russian Words with Katya - Direction Words

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 2:20

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=UrIeMVg8oXo

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> after the core ideas; trace the route with your finger as you listen.

**Note:** RussianPod101: Weekly Words with Katya, direction words. Parents: the host mentions the slang idiom that someone who is unfaithful “goes to the left.”

---

### BACKUP VIDEO

**Learn Russian | Listening Practice - Giving Russian Directions to a Taxi Driver**

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 1:56

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=2oW7G0u7IWY

RussianPod101: a short listening practice, giving directions to a taxi driver.

### KEY TERMS

**Как пройти́...? (kahk prahy-TEE)**
How do I get to... (on foot)?

**напра́во, нале́во (nahp-RAH-vuh nah-LYEH-vuh)**
To the right, to the left.

**пря́мо (PRYAH-muh)**
Straight ahead.

**спра́ва, сле́ва (SPRAH-vuh SLYEH-vuh)**
On the right, on the left.

**далеко́, бли́зко (duh-lee-KOH BLEEZ-kuh)**
Far, near.

### VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Russian is written in Cyrillic. The mark over a vowel (молоко́) shows the stressed syllable, the one said loudest; it is a teaching mark, not part of normal spelling. In the sound guides the stressed syllable is in capitals: mah-lah-KOH.

## напра́во
**nahp-RAH-vuh**
adverb
to the right

## нале́во
**nah-LYEH-vuh**
adverb
to the left

## пря́мо
**PRYAH-muh**
adverb
straight ahead

## спра́ва
**SPRAH-vuh**
adverb
on the right

## далеко́
**duh-lee-KOH**
adverb
far

## путь
**poot**
noun · masculine
way, road

### CORE IDEAS

**Asking the way.** Begin politely: Извини́те, пожа́луйста, как пройти́ на по́чту? (Excuse me, how do I get to the post office?) or Где здесь банк? (Where is a bank around here?) Ask Э́то далеко́? (Is it far?) The answer may be Нет, бли́зко. (No, it is near.) or Да, далеко́, лу́чше е́хать на авто́бусе.

**Giving directions.** Иди́те пря́мо. (Go straight.) Пото́м поверни́те напра́во / нале́во. (Then turn right / left.) Банк спра́ва / сле́ва. (The bank is on the right / left.) Напра́во answers where to; спра́ва answers where. Useful words: ря́дом (next door), напро́тив (opposite), на углу́ (on the corner).

**The Way.** When Thomas said, Lord, we know not whither thou goest; and how can we know the way? Jesus answered: Я есмь путь, и и́стина, и жизнь; никто́ не прихо́дит к Отцу́, как то́лько че́рез Меня́. The Russian word путь (way, road) is the same one used in Счастли́вого пути́! (Have a good trip!).

ACTIVITY

## Treasure hunt

Plan a treasure hunt around your house or yard with directions in Russian.

**You will need**

- Index cards
- A small prize

**Steps**

1. Hide a prize.
2. Write five clue cards in Russian: Иди́ пря́мо пять шаго́в. Поверни́ нале́во.
3. A family member follows the clues (help translate if needed).
4. Switch: follow someone else's Russian directions.

**Tips**

- Draw a map with the route and label it in Russian.

**Check your work**

- ☐ My five clues were in correct Russian.
- ☐ The hunter found the prize.

RUSSIAN NOTEBOOK

1. In your notebook, write directions in Russian from your home to two places, and a short dialogue of asking the way.

> **From history.** Old Russian roads were marked by verst posts, striped black and white, every verst (about two-thirds of a mile). Pushkin and other poets wrote about them as they traveled the long roads of Russia by carriage and sleigh.

> **At home in Russian.** If your student already speaks Russian, give directions to a real place in your town using street names and landmarks, then follow them together.

### WORKED EXAMPLES

**Example 1.** Ask the way to the library.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Извини́те, как пройти́…
2. На or в + accusative: в библиоте́ку.

**Answer:** Извини́те, как пройти́ в библиоте́ку?

**Example 2.** Say "Go straight, then turn right. The church is on the left."

▼ **Show solution**

1. Иди́те пря́мо, пото́м поверни́те напра́во.
2. Where: сле́ва.

**Answer:** Иди́те пря́мо, пото́м поверни́те напра́во. Це́рковь сле́ва.

### PRACTICE

1. Easy Say "to the right" and "to the left."

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Напра́во, нале́во.

2. Easy Say "straight ahead."

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Пря́мо.

3. Easy Ask “Is it far?”

▼ **Show answer**

Э́то далеко́?

4. Medium Ask “Where is a store around here?”

▼ **Show answer**

Где здесь магази́н?

5. Medium Say “The bank is opposite the school.”

▼ **Show answer**

Банк напро́тив шко́лы.

6. Medium Напра́во or спра́ва? Поверни́те …; По́чта ….

▼ **Show answer**

Напра́во; спра́ва.

7. Hard Give directions: straight, left, then the post office is on the right.

▼ **Show answer**

Иди́те пря́мо, пото́м поверни́те нале́во. По́чта спра́ва.

8. Hard Translate: I am the way, the truth, and the life.

▼ **Show answer**

Я есмь путь, и и́стина, и жизнь.

### COMMON MISTAKES

- Saying Поверни́те спра́ва. Direction of movement is напра́во.
- Using как дойти́ and как пройти́ for a long trip by car. For vehicles ask Как дое́хать до…?

> **Make it a game · Robot.** One player is a robot, blindfolded. The others guide the robot across the room to a target with Russian commands only: Пря́мо! Напра́во! Нале́во! Стоп! Switch roles when the robot arrives.

> **Scripture.** “Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.” (John 14:6, KJV)
>
> Russian Synodal Bible (1876): *Я есмь путь, и истина, и жизнь* Jesus is not only a guide who shows the way to God; He is the Way.

UNIT 7

# Те́ло и оде́жда: Body, Clothing and Adjectives

Lesson 7.1 teaches the parts of the body and saying what hurts (У меня́ боли́т голова́), with Psalm 139.

Lesson 7.2 teaches clothing, the verb носи́ть and Что на тебе́?, with Surikov’s winter crowd in fur hats and coats.

Lesson 7.3 teaches adjective endings in the nominative, the colors and Како́й? Кака́я? Како́е? Каки́е?

### PREREQUISITES

- Units 1–6, especially gender, the prepositional (на мне) and the accusative.

### MASTERY CHECKLIST

- ☐ I can name the parts of the body and say what hurts.
- ☐ I can name clothes and say what someone is wearing.
- ☐ I can make an adjective agree with its noun in gender and number.
- ☐ I can describe people and things with colors and other adjectives.

### OPTIONAL BOOKS AND RESOURCES FOR THIS UNIT

- **Wiktionary (Russian entries)**: Free online: every Russian word with its stress, meaning, endings and often a recording by a native speaker.

Not required. Every activity in this unit works with paper, pencil, scissors and the free links below. School Launch is independent and free.

LESSONS IN THIS UNIT

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 7.1 | **У меня́ боли́т голова́: The Body** | 4 sessions of 40–50 minutes |
| 7.2 | **Что на тебе́? Clothing** | 4 sessions of 40–50 minutes |
| 7.3 | **Како́й? Adjectives and Colors** | 4 sessions of 40–50 minutes |

# Unit 7 test

Questions 1–2 are oral: the parent asks and marks. The rest are written, without notes. 50 points.

1. **5 pts**
   Oral: Point to and name eight parts of the body.

2. **5 pts**
   Oral: Describe what you are wearing today, with colors.

3. **5 pts**
   Say “I have a headache” and “My leg hurts.”

4. **5 pts**
   Give the plurals: глаз, у́хо, рука́.

5. **5 pts**
   Conjugate носи́ть for я, ты and они́.

6. **5 pts**
   Make the adjective agree: (но́вый) … ша́пка, … пальто́, … боти́нки.

7. **5 pts**
   Make the adjective agree: (большо́й) … дом, (хоро́ший) … кни́га.

8. **5 pts**
   Translate: What color is your coat? It is black.

9. **5 pts**

   Why is the plural of хоро́ший written with и? Give its four forms.

10. **5 pts**

    Translate 1 Samuel 16:7b from Russian: челове́к смо́трит на лице́, а Госпо́дь смо́трит на се́рдце.

**ANSWER KEY**

1. Голова́, глаз, нос, рот, у́хо, рука́, нога́, спина́ (any eight, correctly stressed).
2. На мне си́ние джи́нсы и бе́лая руба́шка (any accurate description).
3. У меня́ боли́т голова́. У меня́ боли́т нога́.
4. Глаза́, у́ши, ру́ки.
5. Ношу́, но́сишь, но́сят.
6. Но́вая ша́пка, но́вое пальто́, но́вые боти́нки.
7. Больша́й дом, хоро́шая кни́га.
8. Како́го цве́та твоё пальто́? Оно́ чёрное.
9. After ж, ш, ч, щ, г, к, х write и, not ы: хоро́ший, хоро́шая, хоро́шее, хоро́шие.
10. Man looketh on the outward appearance, but the Lord looketh on the heart.

Printable answer key (PDF, for the parent)

**UNIT CHALLENGE: FASHION THROUGH HISTORY**

Choose three paintings from this course and describe in Russian what each person is wearing (at least five sentences per painting, with adjectives and colors). Present them as a short “museum tour.”

| LOOK FOR | WHAT IT MEANS |
|---|---|
| **Speaking** | The student gives the museum tour aloud. |
| **Accuracy** | Adjective agreement and clothing words are correct. |
| **Product** | Fifteen or more sentences describe the paintings accurately. |
| **Effort** | The work is careful, complete and on time. |

# 7.1 У меня́ боли́т голова́: The Body

**OBJECTIVES**

- Name the parts of the body.
- Say what hurts.
- Learn Psalm 139:14.

> **Warm-up.** Touch your head, your shoulders, your knees and your toes. Now say them in Russian! Today you learn the body and how to tell a doctor what hurts.

**WATCH**

### Learn Russian - Body Parts Vocabulary

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 2:43

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=gqaI4O8VDxo

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> after the core ideas; point to each part as you hear it.

**Note:** RussianPod101: Russian body parts vocabulary.

---

**BACKUP VIDEO**

### Weekly Russian Words with Katya - Your Face

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 2:32

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=ryPpVm8yahw

RussianPod101: Weekly Words with Katya, your face.

**KEY TERMS**

**голова́ (guh-lah-VAH)**
Head.

**рука́ (roo-KAH)**
Hand, arm.

**нога́ (nah-GAH)**

Foot, leg.

**глаз, глаза́ (glahs glah-ZAH)**

Eye, eyes.

**У меня́ боли́т… (oo mee-NYAH bah-LEET)**

My … hurts.

### VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Russian is written in Cyrillic. The mark over a vowel (молоко́) shows the stressed syllable, the one said loudest; it is a teaching mark, not part of normal spelling. In the sound guides the stressed syllable is in capitals: mah-lah-KOH.

| | |
|---|---|
| **голова́**<br>**guh-lah-VAH**<br>noun · feminine<br>head | **рука́**<br>**roo-KAH**<br>noun · feminine<br>hand, arm (ру́ки) |
| **нога́**<br>**nah-GAH**<br>noun · feminine<br>foot, leg (но́ги) | **глаз**<br>**glahs**<br>noun · masculine<br>eye (глаза́) |
| **се́рдце**<br>**SYEHR-tsee**<br>noun · neuter<br>heart | **боле́ть**<br>**bah-LYEHT**<br>verb<br>to hurt (боли́т, боля́т) |

### CORE IDEAS

**The body.** голова́ (head), лицо́ (face), глаз (eye), нос (nose), рот (mouth), у́хо (ear), зуб (tooth), ше́я (neck), спина́ (back), живо́т (stomach), се́рдце (heart). Russian has one word for hand and arm, рука́, and one for foot and leg, нога́. Some plurals are irregular: глаза́, у́ши, ру́ки, но́ги.

**What hurts.** У меня́ боли́т голова́. (My head hurts; literally by me hurts the head.) With a plural, the verb is plural: У меня́ боля́т зу́бы. The doctor asks Что у вас

боли́т? or Как вы себя́ чу́вствуете? (How do you feel?) Answer Я бо́лен / Я больна́ (I am sick) or Я здоро́в / Я здоро́ва (I am well). Wish someone Выздора́вливай! (Get well!).

**Wonderfully made.** David praised God for the way He made the human body: Сла́влю Тебя́, потому́ что я ди́вно устро́ен. (I will praise thee; for I am fearfully and wonderfully made.) Paul wrote that the church is like a body with many members: the eye cannot say to the hand, I have no need of thee.

ACTIVITY

### Body diagram

Make a labeled diagram of the human body in Russian.

**You will need**

- Large paper (trace a family member if you like)
- Markers

**Steps**

1. Draw or trace an outline of a body.
2. Label at least fifteen parts in Russian with stress marks.
3. Add plural forms where they are irregular.
4. Quiz a family member: point and ask Что э́то?

**Tips**

- Write a short doctor’s visit dialogue under the diagram.

**Check your work**

- ☐ I labeled fifteen parts.
- ☐ I can name each part from memory.

RUSSIAN NOTEBOOK

1. In your notebook, write fifteen body words with stress marks and a short dialogue at the doctor’s office.

**From history.** Many Russian sayings use the body: Ум хорошо́, а два лу́чше (One mind is good, but two are better), and Глаза́ боя́тся, а ру́ки де́лают (The eyes are afraid, but the hands do the work), said when facing a big job.

**At home in Russian.** If your student already speaks Russian, learn the words for common illnesses and medicine (просту́да, температу́ра, лека́рство) and act out a visit to a Russian doctor.

### WORKED EXAMPLES

**Example 1.** Say "My stomach hurts."

▼ **Show solution**

1. У меня́ боли́т….
2. Живо́т.

**Answer:** У меня́ боли́т живо́т.

**Example 2.** Say "My ears hurt."

▼ **Show solution**

1. Plural: у́ши.
2. Plural verb: боля́т.

**Answer:** У меня́ боля́т у́ши.

### PRACTICE

1. Easy Give the Russian for head and face.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Голова́, лицо́.

2. Easy Give the Russian for hand/arm and foot/leg.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Рука́, нога́.

3. Easy Say “My head hurts.”

▼ **Show answer**

У меня́ боли́т голова́.

4. Medium Give the plurals of глаз and у́хо.

▼ **Show answer**

Глаза́, у́ши.

5. Medium Ask a patient “What hurts?” formally.

▼ **Show answer**

Что у вас боли́т?

6. Medium Say “I am sick” as yourself.

▼ **Show answer**

Я бо́лен. / Я больна́.

7. Hard Say “My teeth hurt, and I am sick.”

▼ **Show answer**

У меня́ боля́т зу́бы, и я бо́лен (больна́).

8. Hard Translate: I am fearfully and wonderfully made.

▼ **Show answer**

Я ди́вно устро́ен.

### COMMON MISTAKES

- Saying Моя́ голова́ боли́т. Russian prefers У меня́ боли́т голова́.
- Using боли́т with a plural. With зу́бы or у́ши use боля́т.

> **Make it a game · Са́ймон говори́т.** Play Simon Says in Russian: Са́ймон говори́т: покажи́ нос! (show your nose). Players touch the part only if the command begins with Са́ймон говори́т. A mistake puts you out.

> **Scripture.** “I will praise thee; for I am fearfully and wonderfully made: marvellous are thy works; and that my soul knoweth right well.” (Psalm 139:14, KJV)
>
> Russian Synodal Bible (1876): *Славлю Тебя, потому что я дивно устроен* (Psalm 138:14 in the Russian numbering) Every human body is God’s handiwork, made with wonderful care.

UNIT 7 · ТЕ́ЛО И ОДЕ́ЖДА: BODY, CLOTHING AND ADJECTIVES · LESSON 7.2 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

# 7.2 Что на тебе́? CLOTHING

**OBJECTIVES**

- Name clothes.
- Say what someone is wearing.
- Look closely at Taking the Snow Town.

> **Warm-up.** What are you wearing today? What do you wear in winter? Today you learn to talk about clothes in Russian.

**WATCH**

## Learn Russian - Russian Clothing Vocabulary

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 2:43

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=GbTUODH8Rjg

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> after the core ideas; touch each item of your clothing as you hear it.

**Note:** RussianPod101: Russian clothing vocabulary.

---

**BACKUP VIDEO**

**Weekly Russian Words with Katya - Clothes**

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 2:02

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=SSNPnedmU1U

RussianPod101: Weekly Words with Katya, clothes.

KEY TERMS

**оде́жда (ah-DYEHZH-duh)**
Clothing.

**На мне… (nah mnyeh)**
I am wearing… (on me).

**пальто́ (pahl-TOH)**
Coat (never changes).

**носи́ть (nah-SEET)**
To wear (regularly).

**ша́пка (SHAHP-kuh)**
Warm hat.

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Russian is written in Cyrillic. The mark over a vowel (молоко́) shows the stressed syllable, the one said loudest; it is a teaching mark, not part of normal spelling. In the sound guides the stressed syllable is in capitals: mah-lah-KOH.

**оде́жда**
**ah-DYEHZH-duh**
noun · feminine
clothing

**руба́шка**
**roo-BAHSH-kuh**
noun · feminine
shirt

**пла́тье**
**PLAHT-yee**
noun · neuter
dress

**пальто́**
**pahl-TOH**
noun · neuter (never changes)
coat

**ша́пка**
**SHAHP-kuh**
noun · feminine
warm hat

**носи́ть**
**nah-SEET**
verb
to wear (ношу́, но́сишь)

CORE IDEAS

**The story.** Vasily Surikov grew up in Krasnoyarsk in Siberia, where at the end of winter, during the festival of Ма́сленица before Lent, young men played a game

called taking the snow town: a fortress of snow was built, and riders on horseback charged to break through while the defenders tried to stop them with brooms and snowballs. In 1891 Surikov painted the moment a rider bursts through the wall, with his own relatives and neighbors in the laughing crowd. Look at the clothes: fur hats, shawls, sheepskin coats and felt boots for a Siberian winter.

**Clothes.** руба́шка (shirt), пла́тье (dress), ю́бка (skirt), брю́ки (trousers, always plural), джи́нсы, сви́тер, ку́ртка (jacket), пальто́ (coat, never changes), ша́пка (warm hat), шарф (scarf), боти́нки (boots, shoes), ва́ленки (felt boots). Наде́нь ша́пку! (Put on your hat!) is what every Russian grandmother says in winter.

**Wearing.** To say what someone has on now, Russian says on me, on him: На мне си́ний сви́тер. На нём пальто́. Что на тебе́? The pronouns after на: на мне, на тебе́, на нём, на ней, на нас, на вас, на них. For what someone wears regularly, use носи́ть: я ношу́, ты но́сишь, он но́сит, мы но́сим, вы но́сите, они́ но́сят. Зимо́й я ношу́ ша́пку.

PICTURE STUDY



*Taking the Snow Town*, Vasily Surikov, 1891 · Oil on canvas · State Russian Museum, St. Petersburg

Image: Wikimedia Commons, public domain

Surikov is best known for huge paintings of Russian history, but this cheerful scene of a Siberian winter game is one of his most loved works.

**Look closely**

- What is the rider doing?
- Name as many kinds of clothing as you can.
- How do the people in the crowd feel?
- What details show it is very cold?

**Talk about it**

1. What winter games does your family play?
2. Why might a painter put his own family into a painting?

ACTIVITY

## Dress the paper doll

Make a paper doll with Russian clothing for every season.

**You will need**

- Card stock
- Colored pencils, scissors

**Steps**

1. Draw and cut out a simple figure.
2. Make at least ten paper clothes for summer and winter.
3. Label each in Russian.
4. Dress the doll and describe it: На ней кра́сное пла́тье и бе́лая ша́пка.

**Tips**

- Add a weather card to choose the right clothes.

**Check your work**

☐ I made ten labeled clothes.

☐ I described the doll in Russian.

RUSSIAN NOTEBOOK

1. In your notebook, write fifteen clothing words, conjugate носи́ть, and describe what three family members are wearing today.

> **From history.** Ма́сленица, the week before Great Lent, is the old Russian farewell to winter, with pancakes (блины́), sleigh rides and games like the snow town. The last day is Forgiveness Sunday, when people ask one another's forgiveness before the fast begins.

> **At home in Russian.** If your student already speaks Russian, describe old family photos: who is wearing what, and how clothes have changed.

### WORKED EXAMPLES

**Example 1.** Say “He is wearing a jacket and jeans.”

▼ **Show solution**

1. On him: на нём.
2. Ку́ртка, джи́нсы.

**Answer:** На нём ку́ртка и джи́нсы.

**Example 2.** Say “In winter we wear felt boots.”

▼ **Show solution**

1. Носи́ть, мы: но́сим.
2. Ва́ленки (plural, same in the accusative).

**Answer:** Зимо́й мы но́сим ва́ленки.

### PRACTICE

1. Easy Give the Russian for shirt and dress.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Руба́шка, пла́тье.

2. Easy Give the Russian for coat and hat.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Пальто́, ша́пка.

3. Easy Ask a friend “What are you wearing?”

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Что на тебе́?

4. Medium Say “She is wearing a skirt.”

   ▼ **Show answer**

   На ней ю́бка.

5. Medium Conjugate носи́ть for я and ты.

▼ **Show answer**

Ношу́, но́сишь.

6. Medium What is special about пальто́ and брю́ки?

▼ **Show answer**

Пальто́ never changes; брю́ки is always plural.

7. Hard Say “In winter I wear a hat and a scarf.”

▼ **Show answer**

Зимо́й я ношу́ ша́пку и шарф.

8. Hard Describe the rider in the painting.

▼ **Show answer**

На нём ша́пка и шу́ба. Он на ло́шади.

### COMMON MISTAKES

- Saying я носю́. The я form is ношу́.
- Changing пальто́: в пальто́, на пальто́. It never changes.

> **Make it a game · Fashion show.** Each player puts on a funny mix of clothes. The others describe each “model” in Russian: На нём…! Count the correct items; the best describer wins.

> **Scripture.** “And why take ye thought for raiment? Consider the lilies of the field, how they grow; they toil not, neither do they spin:” (Matthew 6:28, KJV)
>
> Russian Synodal Bible (1876): *Посмотрите на полевые лилии, как они растут* Jesus told His disciples not to worry about clothing; God dresses the lilies of the field more beautifully than Solomon.

# 7.3 Како́й? Adjectives and Colors

**OBJECTIVES**

- Make adjectives agree with nouns.
- Name the colors.
- Learn 1 Samuel 16:7.

> **Warm-up.** A red shirt, a red dress, red trousers: in English red never changes. In Russian it changes with every noun. Today you learn the adjective endings.

**WATCH**

## The Different Ending for Russian Adjectives | Daily Russian Conversations #16

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 4:03

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=vy5vd8AWjF8

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> after the core ideas; write each color in all four forms.

**Note:** RussianPod101 Daily Russian Conversations: the endings of Russian adjectives.

---

**BACKUP VIDEO**

**Weekly Russian Words with Katya - Colors**

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 2:31

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=yDHJT4MyTpI

RussianPod101: Weekly Words with Katya, colors.

**KEY TERMS**

**Како́й? Кака́я? Како́е? Каки́е? (kah-KOHY kah-KAH-yuh kah-KOH-yee kah-KEE-yee)**
What kind of? Which?

**кра́сный (KRAHS-nihy)**
Red.

**си́ний, голубо́й (SEE-neey guh-loo-BOHY)**

Dark blue, light blue.

**больш**о́**й, ма́ленький (bahl-SHOHY MAH-leen-keey)**

Big, small.

**хоро́ший, плохо́й (khah-ROH-shihy plah-KHOHY)**

Good, bad.

### VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Russian is written in Cyrillic. The mark over a vowel (молоко́) shows the stressed syllable, the one said loudest; it is a teaching mark, not part of normal spelling. In the sound guides the stressed syllable is in capitals: mah-lah-KOH.

## кра́сный

**KRAHS-nihy**

adjective

red

## си́ний

**SEE-neey**

adjective · soft

dark blue

## голубо́й

**guh-loo-BOHY**

adjective

light blue

## зелёный

**zee-LYOH-nihy**

adjective

green

## большо́й

**bahl-SHOHY**

adjective

big

## хоро́ший

**khah-ROH-shihy**

adjective

good (хоро́шая, хоро́шее, хоро́шие)

### CORE IDEAS

**Endings.** An adjective takes the gender and number of its noun: но́вый дом, но́вая кни́га, но́вое окно́, но́вые кни́ги (-ый, -ая, -ое, -ые). If the stress is on the ending, the masculine is -о́й: большо́й, молодо́й. After г, к, х, ж, ш, ч and щ write и, not ы: ру́сский, ру́сские; хоро́ший, хоро́шие. Soft adjectives take -ий, -яя, -ее, -ие: си́ний, си́няя, си́нее, си́ние.

**Colors.** бе́лый (white), чёрный (black), кра́сный (red), жёлтый (yellow), зелёный (green), си́ний (dark blue), голубо́й (light blue), кори́чневый (brown), се́рый (gray), ора́нжевый (orange). Russian treats dark blue and light blue as two separate colors. Ask Како́го цве́та…? (What color is…?): Како́го цве́та твоя́ ку́ртка? — Она́ зелёная.

**Describing people.** Он высо́кий и молодо́й. (He is tall and young.) Она́ до́брая и у́мная. (She is kind and smart.) Ask Како́й он? (What is he like?) When God sent Samuel to anoint a king, Samuel admired a tall, handsome son of Jesse, but the Lord said: челове́к смо́трит на лице́, а Госпо́дь смо́трит на се́рдце. The best adjectives describe the heart: до́брый, че́стный, ве́рный (kind, honest, faithful).

ACTIVITY

## Color wheel

Make a Russian color wheel and describe objects with it.

**You will need**

- Paper plate or circle of card
- Paints or colored pencils

**Steps**

1. Paint ten colors in sections around the wheel.
2. Label each color in Russian.
3. Find one object of each color in your house.
4. Describe each: Э́то кра́сная ча́шка. Э́то зелёный каранда́ш.

**Tips**

- Add the feminine, neuter and plural form of each color on the back.

**Check your work**

- ☐ My wheel has ten labeled colors.
- ☐ My descriptions agree in gender.

### RUSSIAN NOTEBOOK

1. In your notebook, make a chart of five adjectives in all four forms, and write ten sentences describing people and things.

> **From history.** The old Russian word кра́сный meant beautiful as well as red, which is why Moscow's Кра́сная пло́щадь, named centuries ago, was the "beautiful square." The meaning survives in the word прекра́сный, wonderful.

> **At home in Russian.** If your student already speaks Russian, learn the short forms of adjectives (Он рад, Она́ гото́ва, Мы должны́) and how they differ from the long ones.

### WORKED EXAMPLES

**Example 1.** Say "a red dress."

▼ **Show solution**

1. Пла́тье is neuter.
2. Neuter: -ое.

**Answer:** Кра́сное пла́тье.

**Example 2.** Say "good books."

▼ **Show solution**

1. Plural: -ие after ш.
2. Хоро́шие.

**Answer:** Хоро́шие кни́ги.

### PRACTICE

1. Easy Give the Russian for white and black.

▼ **Show answer**

Бе́лый, чёрный.

2. Easy Say “a big house.”

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Большо́й дом.

3. Easy Say “a new book.”

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Но́вая кни́га.

4. Medium Say “a blue (dark) shirt.”

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Си́няя руба́шка.

5. Medium Say “Russian words.”

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Ру́сские слова́.

6. Medium Ask “What color is the car?”

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Како́го цве́та маши́на?

7. Hard Describe a person in three adjectives.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Она́ до́брая, у́мная и ве́рная (any correct agreement).

8. Hard Translate: Man looketh on the outward appearance, but the Lord looketh on the heart.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Челове́к смо́трит на лице́, а Госпо́дь смо́трит на се́рдце.

### COMMON MISTAKES

- Writing ы after ш or к. Write и: хоро́шие, ру́сский.
- Using the masculine form with every noun. Match the gender: кра́сная руба́шка, кра́сное пла́тье.

**Make it a game · I spy.** Say Я ви́жу что-то кра́сное! (I see something red). Others guess in Russian with a noun and the right adjective form: Э́то кра́сная кни́га? The finder spies next.

**Scripture.** “But the LORD said unto Samuel, Look not on his countenance, or on the height of his stature; because I have refused him: for the Lord seeth not as man seeth; for man looketh on the outward appearance, but the LORD looketh on the heart.” (1 Samuel 16:7, KJV)

Russian Synodal Bible (1876): *человек смотрит на лице, а Господь смотрит на сердце* God judges by the heart, not by looks. The best qualities are inward ones.

UNIT 8

## Пого́да: Weather, Seasons and Likes

Lesson 8.1 teaches weather words and Кака́я сего́дня пого́да?, with God’s promise of the seasons after the Flood.

Lesson 8.2 teaches the seasons and months with зимо́й, весно́й, ле́том, о́сенью and в январе́, with Levitan’s Golden Autumn.

Lesson 8.3 teaches Мне нра́вится… with the dative pronouns, and люби́ть with an infinitive.

**PREREQUISITES**

- Units 1–7, especially adjectives and the prepositional.

**MASTERY CHECKLIST**

- ☐ I can describe the weather and give a temperature.
- ☐ I can name the seasons and months and say when things happen.
- ☐ I can say what I and others like with

нр
а́в
ит
ьс
я.

- ☐ I can tell

нр from
а́в
ит
ьс
я

л
ю
би́
ть.

**OPTIONAL BOOKS AND RESOURCES FOR THIS UNIT**

- **Wiktionary (Russian entries)**: Free online: every Russian word with its stress, meaning, endings and often a recording by a native speaker.

Not required. Every activity in this unit works with paper, pencil, scissors and the free links below. School Launch is independent and free.

**LESSONS IN THIS UNIT**

## 8.1 Кака́я сего́дня пого́да? The Weather

4 sessions of 40–50 minutes

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 8.2 | **Зимо́й и ле́том: Seasons and Months** | 4 sessions of 40–50 minutes |
| 8.3 | **Мне нра́вится: Likes and the Dative** | 4 sessions of 40–50 minutes |

## Unit 8 test

Questions 1–2 are oral: the parent asks and marks. The rest are written, without notes. 50 points.

1. **5 pts**
   Oral: Give a weather report for today and tomorrow.

2. **5 pts**
   Oral: Say which season you like best and why, and what you like to do then.

3. **5 pts**
   Translate: It is cold. It is snowing. It is windy.

4. **5 pts**
   Say “in winter, in spring, in summer, in autumn.”

5. **5 pts**
   Name the twelve months.

6. **5 pts**
   Say “in January” and “in May.”

7. **5 pts**
   Give the dative of я, ты, он, она́, мы, вы, они́.

8. **5 pts**
   Translate: She likes autumn. We like flowers.

9. **5 pts**
   Нра́вится or нра́вятся? Мне … снег. Ему́ … кни́ги.

10. **5 pts**

Write Ecclesiastes 3:1a in Russian.

**ANSWER KEY**

1. Сего́дня тепло́ и со́лнечно, плюс два́дцать. За́втра бу́дет дождь (any accurate report).
2. Мне нра́вится зима́, потому́ что я люблю́ ката́ться на лы́жах (any accurate answer).
3. Хо́лодно. Идёт снег. Ве́трено.
4. Зимо́й, весно́й, ле́том, о́сенью.
5. Янва́рь, февра́ль, март, апре́ль, май, ию́нь, ию́ль, а́вгуст, сентя́брь, октя́брь, ноя́брь, дека́брь.
6. В январе́, в ма́е.
7. Мне, тебе́, ему́, ей, нам, вам, им.
8. Ей нра́вится о́сень. Нам нра́вятся цветы́.
9. Нра́вится; нра́вятся.
10. Всему́ своё вре́мя.

Printable answer key (PDF, for the parent)

**UNIT CHALLENGE: A YEAR IN RUSSIA**

Make a twelve-month calendar with a picture for each month, the month's name in Russian, a typical weather sentence for a Russian city (Moscow or another), and one sentence about what you like to do in that month. Present it aloud.

| LOOK FOR | WHAT IT MEANS |
|---|---|
| **Speaking** | The student presents the calendar aloud. |
| **Accuracy** | Months, weather, seasons and нра́виться are correct. |
| **Product** | The calendar is complete and illustrated. |
| **Effort** | The work is careful, complete and on time. |

# 8.1 Кака́я сего́дня пого́да? THE WEATHER

**OBJECTIVES**

- Describe the weather.
- Give a temperature in Celsius.
- Learn Genesis 8:22.

> **Warm-up.** Look out the window. Is it hot or cold, sunny or rainy? Russians talk about the weather as much as anyone. Today you learn how.

**WATCH**

### Learn Russian - Russian Weather Vocabulary

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 2:41

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=bJOx630EGr4

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> after the core ideas; draw a symbol for each weather word you hear.

**Note:** RussianPod101: Russian weather vocabulary.

---

**BACKUP VIDEO**

### Weekly Russian Words with Katya - Weather

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 3:11

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=y5qwyeRseoU

RussianPod101: Weekly Words with Katya, weather.

**KEY TERMS**

**пого́да (pah-GOH-duh)**
Weather.

**хо́лодно, тепло́, жа́рко (KHOH-luhd-nuh teep-LOH ZHAHR-kuh)**
It is cold, warm, hot.

**идёт дождь, идёт снег (ih-DYOHT dohzht ih-DYOHT snyehk)**

It is raining, it is snowing.

**гра́дус (GRAH-doos)**

Degree.

**со́лнечно (SOHL-neech-nuh)**

It is sunny.

### VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Russian is written in Cyrillic. The mark over a vowel (молоко́) shows the stressed syllable, the one said loudest; it is a teaching mark, not part of normal spelling. In the sound guides the stressed syllable is in capitals: mah-lah-KOH.

## пого́да

**pah-GOH-duh**

noun · feminine

weather

## хо́лодно

**KHOH-luhd-nuh**

adverb

cold (it is cold)

## тепло́

**teep-LOH**

adverb

warm (it is warm)

## дождь

**dohzht**

noun · masculine

rain (идёт дождь)

## снег

**snyehk**

noun · masculine

snow (идёт снег)

## гра́дус

**GRAH-doos**

noun · masculine

degree (гра́дуса, гра́дусов)

### CORE IDEAS

**Weather words.** Ask Кака́я сего́дня пого́да? Many answers are adverbs in -о, with no subject: хо́лодно (cold), прохла́дно (cool), тепло́ (warm), жа́рко (hot), со́лнечно (sunny), ве́трено (windy), о́блачно (cloudy). Rain and snow “go”: Идёт дождь. Идёт снег. To say it for a person, add the dative: Мне хо́лодно. (I am cold.)

**Temperature.** Russia uses Celsius. Сего́дня плюс два́дцать. (Today it is plus 20°C, about 68°F.) Ми́нус де́сять is −10°C (14°F). With the word degrees: оди́н гра́дус, два гра́дуса, пять гра́дусов. A Moscow winter is often around −10°C, and in Siberia it can reach −40°C, when even Russians stay home.

**Yesterday and tomorrow.** For the past use бы́ло, and for the future бу́дет: Вчера́ бы́ло хо́лодно. За́втра бу́дет тепло́. Вчера́ шёл дождь. (It rained yesterday.) After the Flood God promised Noah: се́яние и жа́тва, хо́лод и зной, ле́то и зима́, день и ночь не прекраты́тся.

ACTIVITY

## Weather station

Keep a Russian weather diary for one week.

**You will need**

- A thermometer (or a weather app)
- Chart paper

**Steps**

1. Each day, record the temperature in Celsius.
2. Write two weather sentences in Russian.
3. Compare with Moscow's weather the same day (look it up).
4. At the end of the week, give a short weather report aloud.

**Tips**

- Record a video weather report like a TV forecaster.

**Check your work**

- ☐ I recorded seven days.
- ☐ My sentences are correct.

RUSSIAN NOTEBOOK

1. In your notebook, write ten weather words and a weather report for yesterday, today and tomorrow.

> **From history.** The Russian winter has defeated invaders more than once; Napoleon's army in 1812 retreated from Moscow through snow and bitter cold. Russians, though, love winter for skiing, skating and sledding, and say Нет плохо́й пого́ды, есть плоха́я оде́жда: There is no bad weather, only bad clothing.

> **At home in Russian.** If your student already speaks Russian, watch a short Russian weather forecast together and write down every number and weather word.

### WORKED EXAMPLES

**Example 1.** Say "Today it is warm and sunny, plus eighteen."

▼ **Show solution**

1. Тепло́, со́лнечно.
2. Плюс восемна́дцать.

**Answer:** Сего́дня тепло́ и со́лнечно, плюс восемна́дцать.

**Example 2.** Say "Tomorrow it will snow."

▼ **Show solution**

1. Future: бу́дет.
2. Снег.

**Answer:** За́втра бу́дет снег.

### PRACTICE

1. Easy Ask "What is the weather today?"

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Кака́я сего́дня пого́да?

2. Easy Say "It is cold."

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Хо́лодно.

3. Easy Say “It is raining.”

▼ **Show answer**

Идёт дождь.

4. Medium Say “I am hot.”

▼ **Show answer**

Мне жа́рко.

5. Medium Say “minus five degrees.”

▼ **Show answer**

Ми́нус пять гра́дусов.

6. Medium Say “Yesterday it was cloudy.”

▼ **Show answer**

Вчера́ бы́ло о́блачно.

7. Hard Give a weather report for a Moscow winter day.

▼ **Show answer**

В Москве́ хо́лодно, ми́нус де́сять, идёт снег.

8. Hard Translate: summer and winter, and day and night shall not cease.

▼ **Show answer**

Ле́то и зима́, день и ночь не прекраты́тся.

### COMMON MISTAKES

- Saying Я хо́лодно. Use the dative: Мне хо́лодно.
- Saying Э́то дождь for it is raining. Say Идёт дождь.

> **Make it a game · Weather charades.** One player acts out a kind of weather (shivering, fanning, holding an umbrella). The others call out the Russian: Хо́лодно! Жа́рко! Идёт дождь! First correct answer acts next.

> **Scripture.** “While the earth remaineth, seedtime and harvest, and cold and heat, and summer and winter, and day and night shall not cease.” (Genesis 8:22, KJV)
>
> Russian Synodal Bible (1876): *лето и зима, день и ночь не прекратятся* God promised that the seasons would keep their order as long as the earth remains.

UNIT 8 · ПОГО́ДА: WEATHER, SEASONS AND LIKES · LESSON 8.2 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

# 8.2 Зимо́й и ле́том: Seasons and Months

**OBJECTIVES**

- Name the seasons and months.
- Say when with зимо́й and в январе́.
- Look closely at Golden Autumn.

> **Warm-up.** Which season is it now? Which month? When is your birthday? Today you learn the Russian seasons and months.

**WATCH**

## Weekly Russian Words with Katya - Months of the Year

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 2:20

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=98olikyOPIw

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> after the core ideas; say each month after the speaker.

**Note:** RussianPod101: Weekly Words with Katya, months of the year.

---

**BACKUP VIDEO**

**Learn the Top 10 Must-Know Autumn Vocabulary in Russian!**

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 3:53

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=OgVVKvcuEqU

RussianPod101: the top autumn words.

KEY TERMS

**зима́, весна́, ле́то, о́сень (zee-MAH vees-NAH LYEH-tuh OH-seen)**
Winter, spring, summer, autumn.

**зимо́й, весно́й, ле́том, о́сенью (zee-MOHY vees-NOHY LYEH-tuhm OH-seen-yoo)**
In winter, in spring, in summer, in autumn.

**ме́сяц (MYEH-suhts)**
Month.

**в январе́ (v yeen-vah-RYEH)**
In January.

**вре́мя го́да (VRYEH-muh GOH-duh)**
Season (time of year).

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Russian is written in Cyrillic. The mark over a vowel (молоко́) shows the stressed syllable, the one said loudest; it is a teaching mark, not part of normal spelling. In the sound guides the stressed syllable is in capitals: mah-lah-KOH.

## зима́
**zee-MAH**
noun · feminine
winter (зимо́й)

## весна́
**vees-NAH**
noun · feminine
spring (весно́й)

## ле́то
**LYEH-tuh**
noun · neuter
summer (ле́том)

## о́сень
**OH-seen**
noun · feminine
autumn (о́сенью)

## ме́сяц
**MYEH-suhts**
noun · masculine
month

## янва́рь
**yeen-VAHR**
noun · masculine
January (в январе́)

CORE IDEAS

**The story.** Isaac Levitan, the great Russian painter of landscapes, loved autumn above all. He painted the forests turning gold many times, with no people and no houses, only trees, sky and light. Pushkin, too, wrote that autumn was his favorite season; he called it очéй очарова́нье, the charm of the eyes. In central Russia autumn is short and bright: the birches turn yellow in September, and by November the first snow often falls.

**Seasons.** зима́, весна́, ле́то, о́сень. To say in a season, Russian uses a special form with no preposition: зимо́й, весно́й, ле́том, о́сенью. Зимо́й хо́лодно, а ле́том жа́рко. The months are masculine and written with a small letter: янва́рь, февра́ль, март, апре́ль, май, ию́нь, ию́ль, а́вгуст, сентя́брь, октя́брь, ноя́брь, дека́брь.

**In a month.** Use в + the prepositional: в январе́, в феврале́, в ма́рте, в апре́ле, в ма́е, в ию́не, в ию́ле, в а́вгусте, в сентябре́, в октябре́, в ноябре́, в декабре́. Notice the stress moves to the end in the months from сентя́брь to февра́ль. У меня́ день рожде́ния в октябре́. (My birthday is in October.) Solomon wrote: Всему́ своё вре́мя, и вре́мя вся́кой ве́щи под не́бом.

PICTURE STUDY



*Golden Autumn*, Isaac Levitan, 1895 · Oil on canvas · Shown at the Munich Secession exhibition, 1896 (one of Levitan's golden-autumn paintings)

Image: Wikimedia Commons, photograph, CC BY-SA 4.0 (credit: Wikimedia Commons contributor; see the file page)

Levitan painted several golden autumns in the 1890s; the best known hangs in the Tretyakov Gallery. He wanted the viewer to feel what it is like to stand in the quiet woods on a clear autumn day.

**Look closely**

- Describe the colors in Russian: жёлтый, зелёный, кра́сный, кори́чневый.
- What month might this be?
- Where does the light come from?
- What would you hear in this forest?

**Talk about it**

1. Which season do you like best, and why?
2. Why might a painter leave people out of a landscape?

ACTIVITY

## Seasons wheel

Make a wheel of the four seasons and twelve months.

**You will need**

- Paper plate
- Colored pencils

**Steps**

1. Divide the plate into four seasons and twelve months.
2. Label each in Russian.
3. Draw a symbol for each month (a snowflake, a flower, a leaf).
4. Write each family member's birthday: у ма́мы день рожде́ния в ма́е.

**Tips**

- Add one weather sentence for each season.

**Check your work**

- ☐ My wheel is complete and labeled.
- ☐ I can say when each birthday is.

RUSSIAN NOTEBOOK

1. In your notebook, write the seasons in both forms and the twelve months with в, and five sentences about what happens in each season.

> **From history.** Russia is so large that its seasons vary enormously: when it is spring in the south near the Black Sea, there may still be deep snow in Siberia, and in the far north the summer sun does not set for weeks.

> **At home in Russian.** If your student already speaks Russian, read Pushkin's autumn lines (Уны́лая пора́! Оче́й очарова́нье!) and learn them by heart.

### WORKED EXAMPLES

**Example 1.** Say “In autumn it is cool and rainy.”

▼ **Show solution**

1. In autumn: о́сенью.
2. Прохла́дно, идёт дождь.

**Answer:** О́сенью прохла́дно и идёт дождь.

**Example 2.** Say “My birthday is in December.”

▼ **Show solution**

1. В + prepositional.
2. Stress on the end: в декабре́.

**Answer:** У меня́ день рожде́ния в декабре́.

### PRACTICE

1. Easy Name the four seasons.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Зима́, весна́, ле́то, о́сень.

2. Easy Say “in summer.”

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Ле́том.

3. Easy Say “in March.”

   ▼ **Show answer**

   В ма́рте.

4. Medium Name the three summer months.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Ию́нь, ию́ль, а́вгуст.

5. Medium Say “in September” and “in November.”

   ▼ **Show answer**

   В сентябре́, в ноябре́.

6. Medium Ask a friend when his birthday is.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Когда́ у тебя́ день рожде́ния?

7. Hard Say “In winter it snows, and in spring the birds come.”

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Зимо́й идёт снег, а весно́й прилета́ют пти́цы.

8. Hard Translate: To every thing there is a season.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Всему́ своё вре́мя.

#### COMMON MISTAKES

- Saying в зиме́. In a season has no preposition: зимо́й.
- Writing Янва́рь with a capital letter. Months take a small letter.

> **Make it a game · Month chain.** Say the months around the circle in order, as fast as you can. Then backward. Then each player says one month with в (в январе́!) and something that happens then.

> **Scripture.** “To every thing there is a season, and a time to every purpose under the heaven:” (Ecclesiastes 3:1, KJV)
>
> Russian Synodal Bible (1876): *Всему свое время, и время всякой вещи под небом* God has made a time for everything; every season of the year and of life is in His hands.

#### UNIT 8 · ПОГО́ДА: WEATHER, SEASONS AND LIKES · LESSON 8.3 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

## 8.3 Мне нра́вится: Likes and the Dative

#### OBJECTIVES

- Say what you like with нра́виться.

- Use the dative pronouns.
- Tell нра́виться from люби́ть.

> **Warm-up.** You know Мне хо́лодно (I am cold). That мне means to me. Russian uses the same word to say what you like: it is pleasing to me.

**WATCH**

## Speaking of Your Hobbies in Russian | Daily Russian Conversations #21

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 2:52

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=qBWPNYVWITs

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> after the core ideas; note every нра́вится you hear.

**Note:** RussianPod101 Daily Russian Conversations: speaking of your hobbies.

---

**BACKUP VIDEO**

**Learn to Ask Someone's Opinion in Russian | Daily Russian Conversations #10**

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 4:17

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=jEGiVO3xkWk

RussianPod101 Daily Russian Conversations: asking someone's opinion.

**KEY TERMS**

**Мне нра́вится… (mnyeh NRAH-veet-suh)**
I like… (one thing).

**Мне нра́вятся… (mnyeh NRAH-vyuht-suh)**
I like… (several things).

**тебе́, ему́, ей (tee-BYEH yee-MOO yehy)**
To you, to him, to her.

**нам, вам, им (nahm vahm ihm)**
To us, to you, to them.

**Я люблю́ + infinitive (yah lyoob-LYOO)**
I love to….

### VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Russian is written in Cyrillic. The mark over a vowel (молоко́) shows the stressed syllable, the one said loudest; it is a teaching mark, not part of normal spelling. In the sound guides the stressed syllable is in capitals: mah-lah-KOH.

## нра́виться

**NRAH-veet-suh**

verb

to please (мне нра́вится = I like)

## мне

**mnyeh**

pronoun · dative

to me

## ему́

**yee-MOO**

pronoun · dative

to him

## ей

**yehy**

pronoun · dative

to her

## нам

**nahm**

pronoun · dative

to us

## ну́жно

**NOOZH-nuh**

word

it is necessary (мне ну́жно)

### CORE IDEAS

**It pleases me.** Russian says what you like as “it pleases me”: Мне нра́вится о́сень. The thing liked is the subject; the person is in the dative case. With several things: Мне нра́вятся цветы́. Ask Тебе́ нра́вится? or Вам нра́вится? In the negative: Мне не нра́вится дождь.

**The dative pronouns.** я → мне, ты → тебе́, он → ему́, она́ → ей, мы → нам, вы → вам, они́ → им. They also go with хо́лодно, ну́жно, мо́жно: Мне ну́жно идти́. (I need to go.) With names, the dative ending is -y for most masculine nouns and -e for feminine ones: Ма́ме нра́вится ле́то. Бра́ту нра́вится футбо́л.

**Нра́виться and люби́ть.** Нра́виться is to like or find pleasing, often a first impression: Мне нра́вится э́тот го́род. Люби́ть is to love or really like, something lasting: Я люблю́ ма́му. Я люблю́ зи́му. With an infinitive, use either: Я люблю́

чита́ть. Мне нра́вится гуля́ть. The psalm says: Утеша́йся Го́сподом, и Он испо́лнит жела́ния се́рдца твоего́.

ACTIVITY

## Likes interview

Interview three people about what they like and present the results.

**You will need**

- Question sheet
- Notebook

**Steps**

1. Prepare eight questions: Тебе́ нра́вится зима́? Что ты лю́бишь де́лать?
2. Interview three people (use вы with adults).
3. Write the answers in the third person: Ей нра́вится….
4. Present your findings aloud.

**Tips**

- Make a chart of likes and dislikes.

**Check your work**

☐ I interviewed three people.

☐ My sentences use the dative and

нр correctly.
а́в
ит
ьс
я

RUSSIAN NOTEBOOK

1. In your notebook, write the dative pronouns and ten sentences about what you and others like and do not like.

> **From history.** Asked what they like to do in their free time, many Russians name reading, walks in the forest, gathering mushrooms and berries, and the да́ча, a small country house and garden where city families spend summer weekends growing vegetables.

> **At home in Russian.** If your student already speaks Russian, learn the dative of all family members and the phrase Мне ка́жется (it seems to me).

### WORKED EXAMPLES

**Example 1.** Say "He likes music."

▼ **Show solution**

1. Не → ему́.
2. One thing: нра́вится.

**Answer:** Ему́ нра́вится му́зыка.

**Example 2.** Say "They like books."

▼ **Show solution**

1. They → им.
2. Plural: нра́вятся.

**Answer:** Им нра́вятся кни́ги.

### PRACTICE

1. Easy Say "I like summer."

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Мне нра́вится ле́то.

2. Easy Ask a friend "Do you like it?"

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Тебе́ нра́вится?

3. Easy Give the dative of мы.

▼ **Show answer**

Нам.

4. Medium Say “She does not like rain.”

▼ **Show answer**

Ей не нра́вится дождь.

5. Medium Say “We like flowers.”

▼ **Show answer**

Нам нра́вятся цветы́.

6. Medium Say “I love to read.”

▼ **Show answer**

Я люблю́ чита́ть.

7. Hard Say “Mama likes autumn, and my brother likes winter.”

▼ **Show answer**

Ма́ме нра́вится о́сень, а бра́ту нра́вится зима́.

8. Hard Translate: Delight thyself also in the Lord.

▼ **Show answer**

Утеша́йся Го́сподом.

### COMMON MISTAKES

- Saying Я нра́вится. The person is in the dative: Мне нра́вится.
- Using нра́вится with a plural. With several things use нра́вятся.

> **Make it a game · Like or dislike?.** A parent names things quickly. The student answers with Мне нра́вится… or Мне не нра́вится…, choosing нра́вится or нра́вятся. Then ask the parent with Вам нра́вится…?

> **Scripture.** “Delight thyself also in the LORD; and he shall give thee the desires of thine heart.” (Psalm 37:4, KJV)
>
> Russian Synodal Bible (1876): *Утешайся Господом, и Он исполнит желания сердца твоего* (Psalm 36:4 in the Russian numbering) When God is our greatest delight, our desires are shaped by Him.

UNIT 9

# Распоря́док дня: The Daily Routine

Lesson 9.1 teaches telling time and saying at what time things happen, with Psalm 118:24.

Lesson 9.2 teaches reflexive verbs in -ся and -сь for the morning routine, with Jesus rising early to pray.

Lesson 9.3 teaches the days of the week and telling the whole day in order, with Bogdanov-Belsky’s Sunday reading.

**PREREQUISITES**

- Units 1–8, especially numbers to 100 and the two verb patterns.

**MASTERY CHECKLIST**

- ☐ I can ask and tell the time.
- ☐ I can say at what time I do things.
- ☐ I can conjugate reflexive verbs.
- ☐ I can describe my daily and weekly routine in order.

**OPTIONAL BOOKS AND RESOURCES FOR THIS UNIT**

- **Wiktionary (Russian entries)**: Free online: every Russian word with its stress, meaning, endings and often a recording by a native speaker.

Not required. Every activity in this unit works with paper, pencil, scissors and the free links below. School Launch is independent and free.

**LESSONS IN THIS UNIT**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 9.1 | Кото́рый час? Telling Time | 4 sessions of 40–50 minutes |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 9.2 | **Я просыпáюсь: Reflexive Verbs** | 4 sessions of 40–50 minutes |
| 9.3 | **Мой день и моя́ неде́ля: Days and the Order of a Day** | 4 sessions of 40–50 minutes |

## Unit 9 test

Questions 1–2 are oral: the parent asks and marks. The rest are written, without notes. 50 points.

1. **5 pts**
   Oral: Describe your morning from waking to leaving the house, with times.
2. **5 pts**
   Oral: The parent shows four clock times; say each.
3. **5 pts**
   Say 1:00, 2:00, 5:00 and 11:00 with час, часá or часóв.
4. **5 pts**
   Say “at seven o’clock” and “at three o’clock.”
5. **5 pts**
   Conjugate просыпáться in the present.
6. **5 pts**
   When is the ending -сь and when -ся?
7. **5 pts**
   Name the seven days of the week.
8. **5 pts**
   Say “on Monday” and “on Sunday.”
9. **5 pts**
   Translate: First I get dressed, then I eat breakfast.

10. **5 pts**

What does воскресе́нье mean, and why?

**ANSWER KEY**

1. Я просыпа́юсь в семь часо́в. Пото́м я умыва́юсь и одева́юсь… (any accurate routine).
2. For example: час; три часа́; пять часо́в; полови́на восьмо́го.
3. Час, два часа́, пять часо́в, оди́ннадцать часо́в.
4. В семь часо́в, в три часа́.
5. Просыпа́юсь, просыпа́ешься, просыпа́ется, просыпа́емся, просыпа́етесь, просыпа́ются.
6. -сь after a vowel (просыпа́юсь), -ся after a consonant (просыпа́ется).
7. Понеде́льник, вто́рник, среда́, четве́рг, пя́тница, суббо́та, воскресе́нье.
8. В понеде́льник, в воскресе́нье.
9. Снача́ла я одева́юсь, пото́м за́втракаю.
10. Sunday; it means resurrection, the day Christ rose.

Printable answer key (PDF, for the parent)

**UNIT CHALLENGE: MY WEEK**

Write and present a diary of your week in Russian: for each day, at least three sentences with times, reflexive verbs and order words (снача́ла, пото́м, ве́чером). End with what you do on Sunday.

| LOOK FOR | WHAT IT MEANS |
|---|---|
| **Speaking** | The student presents the week aloud. |
| **Accuracy** | Times, reflexive verbs and days are correct. |
| **Product** | All seven days are complete. |
| **Effort** | The work is careful, complete and on time. |

# 9.1 Кото́рый час? Telling Time

**OBJECTIVES**

- Ask and tell the time.
- Use час, часа́ and часо́в.
- Say at what time something happens.

> **Warm-up.** What time is it now? What time do you get up, eat lunch, go to bed? Today you learn to ask and tell the time in Russian.

**WATCH**

### Russian Listening Comprehension - What Time is it Now in Russia?

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 1:54

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=QkJHLSwzfmM

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> after the core ideas; write each time you hear in numbers.

**Note:** RussianPod101: a short listening practice, what time is it now in Russia?

---

**BACKUP VIDEO**

**Russian Listening Comprehension - Asking about a Restaurant's Opening Hours in Russian**

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 2:03

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=u-jtJBB6xsk

RussianPod101: a short listening practice, asking about opening hours.

**KEY TERMS**

**Кото́рый час? (kah-TOH-rihy chahs)**
What time is it?

**час, часа́, часо́в (chahs chah-SAH chah-SOHF)**
Hour, o’clock (1; 2–4; 5 and up).

**мину́та (mee-NOO-tuh)**

Minute.

**В кото́ром часу́? (v kah-TOH-ruhm chah-SOO)**

At what time?

**полови́на (puh-lah-VEE-nuh)**

Half.

### VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Russian is written in Cyrillic. The mark over a vowel (молоко́) shows the stressed syllable, the one said loudest; it is a teaching mark, not part of normal spelling. In the sound guides the stressed syllable is in capitals: mah-lah-KOH.

## час

**chahs**

noun · masculine

hour, o'clock (часа́, часо́в)

## мину́та

**mee-NOO-tuh**

noun · feminine

minute

## вре́мя

**VRYEH-muh**

noun · neuter

time

## у́тром

**OOT-ruhm**

adverb

in the morning

## ве́чером

**VYEH-chee-ruhm**

adverb

in the evening

## полови́на

**puh-lah-VEE-nuh**

noun · feminine

half

### CORE IDEAS

**What time is it?** Ask Кото́рый час? or Ско́лько сейча́с вре́мени? The word hour follows the number pattern: час (one o'clock, no number needed), два, три, четы́ре часа́, пять… двена́дцать часо́в. With minutes: два часа́ два́дцать мину́т (2:20). Like рубль, мину́та changes: одна́ мину́та, две мину́ты, пять мину́т.

**At a time.** Ask В кото́ром часу́? or Когда́? and answer with в: в час, в два часа́, в семь часо́в. Parts of the day: у́тром (in the morning), днём (in the afternoon), ве́чером (in the evening), но́чью (at night). Я обе́даю в час дня. Я ложу́сь спать в де́сять часо́в ве́чера. Timetables use the 24-hour clock: восемна́дцать три́дцать (18:30).

**Half past.** Russian counts the half hour toward the next hour: полови́на восьмо́го is half of the eighth hour, 7:30. In everyday speech many people simply say семь три́дцать. The psalm calls every day a gift: Сей день сотвори́л Госпо́дь: возра́дуемся и возвесели́мся в о́ный! (This is the day which the Lord hath made; we will rejoice and be glad in it.)

ACTIVITY

## Paper clock

Make a clock with movable hands and practice telling time in Russian.

**You will need**

- Paper plate
- Card for hands
- Brass fastener
- Markers

**Steps**

1. Write the numbers 1–12 around the plate.
2. Attach two hands with the fastener.
3. Set a time and say it in Russian.
4. Have a family member set times for you to say, and switch.

**Tips**

- Make a daily schedule card with times in Russian to hang by the clock.

**Check your work**

- ☐ My clock works.
- ☐ I can say any whole and half hour.

### RUSSIAN NOTEBOOK

1. In your notebook, write ten times in words (with час, часá or часóв) and five sentences about when you do things.

> **From history.** Russia stretches across eleven time zones. When it is eight in the morning in Moscow, it is already evening in Kamchatka on the Pacific.

> **At home in Russian.** If your student already speaks Russian, learn the ways to say quarter past and quarter to (чéтверть восьмóго, без чéтверти вóсемь).

### WORKED EXAMPLES

**Example 1.** Say 3:00.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Три takes часá.
2. No minutes.

**Answer:** Три часá.

**Example 2.** Say “I eat supper at six o’clock in the evening.”

▼ **Show solution**

1. В + time.
2. Шесть takes часóв; вéчера.

**Answer:** Я ýжинаю в шесть часóв вéчера.

### PRACTICE

1. Easy Ask “What time is it?”

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Котóрый час?

2. Easy Say 1:00.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Час.

3. Easy Say 4:00.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Четы́ре часа́.

4. Medium Say 9:00 and 12:00.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Де́вять часо́в, двена́дцать часо́в.

5. Medium Say “at eight o’clock.”

   ▼ **Show answer**

   В во́семь часо́в.

6. Medium Say 2:15.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Два часа́ пятна́дцать мину́т.

7. Hard Say 7:30 the traditional way.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Полови́на восьмо́го.

8. Hard Translate: This is the day which the Lord hath made.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Сей день сотвори́л Госпо́дь.

### COMMON MISTAKES

- Saying пять часа́. After 5 and up use часо́в.
- Thinking полови́на восьмо́го is 8:30. It is 7:30, half of the eighth hour.

> **Make it a game · Clock race.** A parent says a time in Russian; two players race to set it on their paper clocks. The first correct clock scores. Then switch: set a time and have the parent say it.

> **Scripture.** “This is the day which the LORD hath made; we will rejoice and be glad in it.” (Psalm 118:24, KJV)
>
> Russian Synodal Bible (1876): *Сей день сотворил Господь: возрадуемся и возвеселимся в оный!* (Psalm 117:24 in the Russian numbering) Every day is made by God; it is a reason for joy and thanks.

UNIT 9 · РАСПОРЯ́ДОК ДНЯ: THE DAILY ROUTINE · LESSON 9.2 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

# 9.2 Я просыпа́юсь: Reflexive Verbs

**OBJECTIVES**

- Conjugate verbs in -ся.
- Describe a morning routine.
- Learn Mark 1:35.

> **Warm-up.** In English you wake up, wash, get dressed. In Russian many of these verbs end in -ся, a little word meaning yourself. Today you learn them.

**WATCH**

## Using Reflexive Verbs in Russian | Daily Russian Conversations #14

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 4:40

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=raTd37xk2fw

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> after the core ideas; write down every verb in -ся you hear.

**Note:** RussianPod101 Daily Russian Conversations: using reflexive verbs.

---

**BACKUP VIDEO**

**Reflexive Verbs & Time Indicators in Russian | Daily Russian Conversations #19**

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 3:41

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=DFD5mm-Tr3Y

RussianPod101 Daily Russian Conversations: reflexive verbs and time words.

### KEY TERMS

**просыпа́ться (pruh-sih-PAHT-suh)**
To wake up.

**умыва́ться (oo-mih-VAHT-suh)**
To wash (face and hands).

**одева́ться (ah-dee-VAHT-suh)**
To get dressed.

**учи́ться (oo-CHEET-suh)**
To study, to be a student.

**ложи́ться спать (lah-ZHIHT-suh spaht)**
To go to bed.

### VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Russian is written in Cyrillic. The mark over a vowel (молоко́) shows the stressed syllable, the one said loudest; it is a teaching mark, not part of normal spelling. In the sound guides the stressed syllable is in capitals: mah-lah-KOH.

## просыпа́ться
**pruh-sih-PAHT-suh**
verb · reflexive
to wake up

## встава́ть
**vstah-VAHT**
verb
to get up (встаю́, встаёшь)

## умыва́ться
**oo-mih-VAHT-suh**
verb · reflexive
to wash up

## одева́ться
**ah-dee-VAHT-suh**
verb · reflexive
to get dressed

## учи́ться
**oo-CHEET-suh**
verb · reflexive
to study (учу́сь, у́чишься)

## моли́ться
**mah-LEET-suh**
verb · reflexive
to pray (молю́сь, мо́лишься)

### CORE IDEAS

**-ся and -сь.** A reflexive verb is a normal verb plus -ся (from себя́, oneself). Conjugate the verb as usual, then add -ся after a consonant and -сь after a vowel: просыпа́ться

→ я просыпа́юсь, ты просыпа́ешься, он просыпа́ется, мы просыпа́емся, вы просыпа́етесь, они́ просыпа́ются. The ending -ться and -тся are both said as -tsa.

**The morning.** Я просыпа́юсь в семь часо́в. Я встаю́ (I get up; from встава́ть: встаю́, встаёшь). Я умыва́юсь, чи́щу зу́бы и одева́юсь. (I wash, brush my teeth and get dressed.) Я молю́сь (I pray; моли́ться). The second-conjugation учи́ться (to study): я учу́сь, ты у́чишься, они́ у́чатся. Я учу́сь в девя́том кла́ссе. (I am in ninth grade.)

**Early prayer.** Mark tells how Jesus, after a long day of healing, rose very early: А у́тром, встав весьма́ ра́но, вы́шел и удали́лся в пусты́нное ме́сто, и там моли́лся. Many Russian Christians begin the day with morning prayers, у́тренние моли́твы, and end it with evening ones.

ACTIVITY

## Morning comic

Draw a six-frame comic of your morning routine with Russian captions.

**You will need**

- Paper divided into six frames
- Pencils

**Steps**

1. Draw yourself waking, washing, dressing, eating, praying or reading, and leaving.
2. Write a caption with a reflexive verb where it fits.
3. Add a time to each frame.
4. Read the comic aloud.

**Tips**

- Make a second comic of someone else's morning, in the third person.

**Check your work**

- ☐ My comic has six captioned frames.
- ☐ The reflexive verbs are correct.

### RUSSIAN NOTEBOOK

1. In your notebook, conjugate просыпáться, одевáться and учúться, and write your morning routine in six sentences.

> **From history.** Russian school starts early, often at 8:30, and many schools work in two shifts, with some classes in the morning and others in the afternoon. Homework, домáшнее задáние, is taken seriously.

> **At home in Russian.** If your student already speaks Russian, learn the morning prayer Бóже, мúлостив бýди мне, грéшному (God be merciful to me a sinner) and its source in Luke 18:13.

### WORKED EXAMPLES

**Example 1.** Conjugate одевáться for ты and вы.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Ты: одевáешь + ся.
2. Вы: одевáете + сь (after a vowel).

**Answer:** Ты одевáешься, вы одевáетесь.

**Example 2.** Say “He gets up at six and washes.”

▼ **Show solution**

1. Вставáть: он встаёт.
2. Умывáться: он умывáется.

**Answer:** Он встаёт в шесть часóв и умывáется.

### PRACTICE

1. Easy Say “I wake up.”

▼ **Show answer**

Я просыпáюсь.

2. Easy Say “I get dressed.”

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Я одева́юсь.

3. Easy Give the они́ form of учи́ться.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   У́чатся.

4. Medium Say “We wash.”

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Мы умыва́емся.

5. Medium Say “When do you go to bed?” to a friend.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Когда́ ты ложи́шься спать?

6. Medium Say “I study in the tenth grade.”

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Я учу́сь в деся́том кла́ссе.

7. Hard Describe your morning in three sentences.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Я просыпа́юсь в семь часо́в. Я умыва́юсь и одева́юсь. Пото́м я за́втракаю.

8. Hard Translate: And in the morning, rising up a great while before day, he went out… and there prayed.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   А у́тром, встав весьма́ ра́но, вы́шел… и там моли́лся.

### COMMON MISTAKES

- Forgetting -ся: Я одева́ю means I dress someone else. Myself: Я одева́юсь.
- Writing -ся after a vowel. After a vowel write -сь: просыпа́юсь.

> **Make it a game · Routine charades.** One player acts out a routine action. The others guess with the right verb and person: Ты умыва́ешься! Ты одева́ешься! The first correct guess acts next.

> **Scripture.** “And in the morning, rising up a great while before day, he went out, and departed into a solitary place, and there prayed.” (Mark 1:35, KJV)
>
> Russian Synodal Bible (1876): *А утром, встав весьма рано, вышел и удалился в пустынное место, и там молился* Jesus, busy as He was, made time to rise early and pray. His example invites us to begin the day with God.

UNIT 9 · РАСПОРЯ́ДОК ДНЯ: THE DAILY ROUTINE · LESSON 9.3 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

# 9.3 Мой день и моя́ неде́ля: Days and the Order of a Day

**OBJECTIVES**

- Name the days of the week.
- Tell the day in order with снача́ла, пото́м, по́сле э́того.
- Look closely at Sunday Reading in a Village School.

> **Warm-up.** What do you do on Monday? On Saturday? On Sunday? Today you learn the days of the week and how to tell your whole day in order.

WATCH

## Weekly Russian Words with Katya - Hygiene Actions

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 2:51

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=k1FSvRJ9WMs

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> after the core ideas; put each action you hear into your daily order.

**Note:** RussianPod101: Weekly Words with Katya, hygiene actions.

---

**BACKUP VIDEO**

### Weekly Russian Words with Katya - Housework

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 1:40

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=YWYUFs9f-Yg

RussianPod101: Weekly Words with Katya, housework.

**KEY TERMS**

**неде́ля (nee-DYEH-luh)**
Week.

**воскресе́нье (vuhsk-ree-SYEHN-yee)**
Sunday (resurrection).

**по́сле э́того (POHS-lee EH-tuh-guh)**
After that.

**понеде́льник, вто́рник, среда́ (puh-nee-DYEHL-neek VTOHR-neek sree-DAH)**
Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday.

**снача́ла, пото́м (snah-CHAH-luh pah-TOHM)**
First, then.

**VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK**

Russian is written in Cyrillic. The mark over a vowel (молоко́) shows the stressed syllable, the one said loudest; it is a teaching mark, not part of normal spelling. In the sound guides the stressed syllable is in capitals: mah-lah-KOH.

## неде́ля

**nee-DYEH-luh**

noun · feminine

week

## понеде́льник

**puh-nee-DYEHL-neek**

noun · masculine

Monday

## пя́тница

**PYAHT-nee-tsuh**

noun · feminine

Friday

## суббо́та

**soob-BOH-tuh**

noun · feminine

Saturday

## воскресе́нье

**vuhsk-ree-SYEHN-yee**

noun · neuter

Sunday

## снача́ла

**snah-CHAH-luh**

adverb

first, at first

### CORE IDEAS

**The story.** On Sundays at Rachinsky's village school, the schoolroom filled with the whole village: bearded peasants, women in head scarves, children on the benches. Nikolai Bogdanov-Belsky, who had grown up there, painted the scene in 1895: the teacher reads aloud at a table by the window, perhaps the Gospel or the lives of the saints, and everyone listens closely. For many villagers who could not read, these readings were their library.

**The week.** понеде́льник, вто́рник, среда́, четве́рг, пя́тница, суббо́та, воскресе́нье. Several names count from Sunday: понеде́льник is the day after the week (неде́ля once meant Sunday), вто́рник the second, четве́рг the fourth, пя́тница the fifth. Суббо́та comes from Sabbath, and воскресе́нье means resurrection. On a day: в понеде́льник, во вто́рник, в сре́ду, в пя́тницу, в воскресе́нье (в + accusative).

**In order.** Снача́ла (first), пото́м (then), по́сле э́того (after that), наконе́ц (finally): Снача́ла я за́втракаю, пото́м иду́ в шко́лу. По́сле обе́да я де́лаю дома́шнее зада́ние. Ве́чером я чита́ю. Наконе́ц я ложу́сь спать. The psalm ends the day

in peace: Споко́йно ложу́сь я и сплю, и́бо Ты, Го́споди, еди́н даёшь мне жить в безопа́сности.

**PICTURE STUDY**



*Sunday Reading in a Village School*, Nikolai Bogdanov-Belsky, 1895 · Oil on canvas · State Russian Museum, St. Petersburg

Image: Wikimedia Commons, public domain

Bogdanov-Belsky painted Rachinsky's school many times, out of gratitude to the teacher who changed his life.

**Look closely**

- Who is reading, and who is listening?
- How many different ages can you find?
- Where does the light come from?
- What might they be reading?

**Talk about it**

1. Why would grown men and women come to hear a reading on Sunday?
2. What does your family do on Sunday?

ACTIVITY

## Weekly planner

Make a planner for next week in Russian.

**You will need**

- Paper and ruler
- Colored pencils

**Steps**

1. Write the seven days in Russian across the top.
2. Fill in three activities with times for each day.
3. Use order words in a summary of one day.
4. Follow the planner and check off what you did.

**Tips**

- Add a verse for each day from this course.

**Check your work**

- ☐ My planner covers seven days.
- ☐ I can read it aloud in Russian.

RUSSIAN NOTEBOOK

1. In your notebook, write the days of the week with в and a paragraph about your whole day with order words.

> **From history.** The Russian word неде́ля now means week, but in old Russian it meant Sunday, the day of no work (не де́лать). When Sunday came to be called воскресе́нье, the day of the Resurrection, неде́ля passed to the whole week.

> **At home in Russian.** If your student already speaks Russian, compare the Russian day names with those in other Slavic languages, like Polish niedziela for Sunday.

### WORKED EXAMPLES

**Example 1.** Say “on Wednesday” and “on Friday.”

▼ **Show solution**

1. В + accusative.
2. Среда́ → в сре́ду, пя́тница → в пя́тницу.

**Answer:** В сре́ду, в пя́тницу.

**Example 2.** Say “First I do my homework, then I read.”

▼ **Show solution**

1. Снача́ла, пото́м.
2. Де́лать дома́шнее зада́ние.

**Answer:** Снача́ла я де́лаю дома́шнее зада́ние, пото́м чита́ю.

### PRACTICE

1. Easy Name the days from Monday to Wednesday.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Понеде́льник, вто́рник, среда́.

2. Easy Say “on Saturday.”

   ▼ **Show answer**

   В суббо́ту.

3. Easy Say “first” and “then.”

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Снача́ла, пото́м.

4. Medium Say “on Tuesday.”

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Во вто́рник.

5. Medium What does суббо́та come from?

▼ **Show answer**

From Sabbath.

6. Medium Say “In the evening I read, and finally I go to bed.”

▼ **Show answer**

Ве́чером я чита́ю, и наконе́ц я ложу́сь спать.

7. Hard Tell your Sunday in three sentences.

▼ **Show answer**

В воскресе́нье я встаю́ в во́семь часо́в. Пото́м мы е́дем в це́рковь. Ве́чером мы обе́даем с ба́бушкой.

8. Hard Translate: I will both lay me down in peace, and sleep.

▼ **Show answer**

Споко́йно ложу́сь я и сплю.

### COMMON MISTAKES

- Saying в среда́. On a day takes the accusative: в сре́ду.
- Writing Понеде́льник with a capital. Days take a small letter.

> **Make it a game · Day scramble.** Write ten sentences of a daily routine on strips and mix them up. Race to put them in order and read them with order words. Then do it with the days of the week.

> **Scripture.** “I will both lay me down in peace, and sleep: for thou, LORD, only makest me dwell in safety.” (Psalm 4:8, KJV)
>
> Russian Synodal Bible (1876): *Спокойно ложусь я и сплю, ибо Ты, Господи, един даешь мне жить в безопасности* (Psalm 4:9 in the Russian numbering) At the end of the day we can rest in peace, because God keeps us safe.

### UNIT 10

# Пра́здники: Christmas, Easter and the Genitive

Lesson 10.1 teaches Russian Christmas: the date, Christmas Eve and the first star, the church services, foods and greetings, with Luke 2:11.

Lesson 10.2 teaches Lent, Palm Sunday and Easter: the night service, кули́ч, па́сха, dyed eggs and Христо́с воскре́се! — Вои́стину воскре́се!, with Ivanov's Easter morning.

Lesson 10.3 teaches the genitive singular after нет (У меня́ нет вре́мени), in the past and future, and for of (кни́га бра́та), with Romans 8:1.

**PREREQUISITES**

- Units 1–9. Христо́с воскре́се and воскресе́нье (Unit 9) are reviewed.

**MASTERY CHECKLIST**

- ☐ I can describe how Russian Christians keep Christmas and Easter, and give the greetings.
- ☐ I can explain why Russian Christmas falls on January 7.
- ☐ I can form the genitive singular of nouns.
- ☐ I can say what there is not or what I do not have, in the present, past and future.

**OPTIONAL BOOKS AND RESOURCES FOR THIS UNIT**

- Wiktionary (Russian entries): Free online: every Russian word with its stress, meaning, endings and often a recording by a native speaker.

Not required. Every activity in this unit works with paper, pencil, scissors and the free links below. School Launch is independent and free.

**LESSONS IN THIS UNIT**


| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 10.1 | **С Рождество́м Христо́вым! Christmas** | 4 sessions of 40–50 minutes |
| 10.2 | **Христо́с воскре́се! Lent and Easter** | 4 sessions of 40–50 minutes |

# Unit 10 test

Questions 1–2 are oral: the parent asks and marks. The rest are written, without notes. 50 points.

1. **5 pts**
   Oral: Give the Christmas and Easter greetings with their answers.

2. **5 pts**
   Oral: Tell three things a Russian family does at Christmas and three at Easter.

3. **5 pts**
   Why is Russian Christmas on January 7?

4. **5 pts**
   What are кули́ч and па́сха (the dish)?

5. **5 pts**
   Put in the genitive: брат, вода́, окно́, неде́ля, ночь.

6. **5 pts**
   Say “I don’t have time” and “There is no milk.”

7. **5 pts**
   Say “There was no snow” and “There will be no school.”

8. **5 pts**
   Say “my brother’s book” and “the color of the sky.”

9. **5 pts**
   Translate: He is not here: for he is risen.

10. **5 pts**
    Translate Romans 8:1a from Russian: нет ны́не никако́го осужде́ния.

**ANSWER KEY**

1. С Рождество́м Христо́вым! — С Рождество́м! Христо́с воскре́се! — Вои́стину воскре́се!
2. For example: waits for the first star, goes to the night service, eats кутья́; bakes кули́ч, dyes eggs, goes to church at midnight.
3. The Russian Orthodox Church keeps the old Julian calendar, now 13 days behind the Gregorian, so December 25 falls on January 7.
4. A tall round Easter bread; a sweet Easter dessert of cottage cheese.
5. Бра́та, воды́, окна́, неде́ли, но́чи.
6. У меня́ нет вре́мени. Нет молока́.
7. Не́ было сне́га. Не бу́дет шко́лы.
8. Кни́га бра́та, цвет не́ба.
9. Его́ нет здесь — Он воскре́с.
10. There is therefore now no condemnation.

Printable answer key (PDF, for the parent)

**UNIT CHALLENGE: A RUSSIAN CHRISTIAN YEAR**

Make an illustrated presentation of the Russian Christian year: Christmas, Theophany, Lent, Palm Sunday, Easter and Pentecost, with the date, the Bible event, the customs and the greeting for each, in Russian sentences. Present it aloud.

| LOOK FOR | WHAT IT MEANS |
|---|---|
| **Speaking** | The student presents the year aloud in Russian. |
| **Accuracy** | Facts, greetings and grammar are correct. |
| **Product** | The presentation is complete and illustrated. |
| **Effort** | The work is careful, complete and on time. |

# 10.1 С Рождество́м Христо́вым! CHRISTMAS

**OBJECTIVES**

- Describe how Russian Christians keep Christmas.
- Give the Christmas greeting.
- Learn Luke 2:11 in Russian.

> **Warm-up.** When do you celebrate Christmas? In Russia most Christians celebrate it on January 7. Today you learn why, and how Russian families keep the feast.

**WATCH**

## How do Russian People Celebrate Christmas?

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 5:09

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=NFuQMR_Zxe4

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> after the core ideas; write down the Christmas words you hear.

**Note:** RussianPod101: how Russian people celebrate Christmas.

---

**BACKUP VIDEO**

**Learn Russian Holidays - St. Nicholas' day**

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 2:51

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=798Kmumfo_w

RussianPod101 Russian Holidays: St. Nicholas Day.

**KEY TERMS**

**Рождество́ (ruhzh-deest-VOH)**
Christmas (the Nativity).

**С Рождество́м! (s ruhzh-deest-VOHM)**
Merry Christmas!

**Соче́льник (sah-CHEHL-neek)**
Christmas Eve.

**ёлка (YOHL-kuh)**
Fir tree, Christmas or New Year tree.

**кутья́ (koot-YAH)**

Sweet wheat porridge with honey and poppy seed.

### VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Russian is written in Cyrillic. The mark over a vowel (молоко́) shows the stressed syllable, the one said loudest; it is a teaching mark, not part of normal spelling. In the sound guides the stressed syllable is in capitals: mah-lah-KOH.

## Рождество́

**ruhzh-deest-VOH**

noun · neuter

Christmas

## Сочéльник

**sah-CHEHL-neek**

noun · masculine

Christmas Eve

## звезда́

**zveez-DAH**

noun · feminine

star

## ёлка

**YOHL-kuh**

noun · feminine

fir tree, Christmas tree

## Спаси́тель

**spah-SEE-teel**

noun · masculine

Saviour

## пода́рок

**pah-DAH-ruhk**

noun · masculine

gift

### CORE IDEAS

**The date.** The Russian Orthodox Church keeps the old Julian calendar for its feasts. The Julian calendar is now thirteen days behind the Gregorian calendar we use, so Christmas, December 25 in the Julian calendar, falls on January 7 in ours. Russian Protestants and Catholics usually keep December 25. The greeting is С Рождество́м Христо́вым! or simply С Рождество́м! (literally With the Nativity of Christ!).

**Christmas Eve.** Сочéльник, January 6, was traditionally a day of fasting until the first star appeared in the evening sky, in memory of the star of Bethlehem. Then the family sat down to a meatless supper with кутья́, boiled wheat with honey, nuts and

poppy seed. Many go to the night service in church, where the troparion of the feast is sung: Рождество́ Твоё, Христе́ Бо́же наш….

**New Year and Christmas.** In the Soviet years Christmas was not a public holiday, and the decorated tree, the gifts and Дед Моро́з (Grandfather Frost) were moved to New Year's Eve, which is still the biggest family celebration of the winter. Christmas returned as a public holiday in 1991. The angel's message is the heart of the feast: и́бо ны́не роди́лся вам в го́роде Дави́довом Спаси́тель, Кото́рый есть Христо́с Госпо́дь.

ACTIVITY

### Christmas card in Russian

Make Christmas cards in Russian for family or friends.

**You will need**

- Card stock
- Colored pencils, glitter or stickers

**Steps**

1. Draw a nativity scene, a star or a church on the front.
2. Write С Рождество́м Христо́вым! inside.
3. Copy Luke 2:11 in Russian.
4. Sign the card in Cyrillic and give it.

**Tips**

- Make a card for January 7 for a Russian-speaking family you know.

**Check your work**

- ☐ My card has the greeting and the verse.
- ☐ Everything is spelled correctly.

RUSSIAN NOTEBOOK

1. In your notebook, write ten Christmas words, the greeting and Luke 2:11 in Russian, and five sentences about Christmas in your family.

> **From history.** Saint Nicholas, bishop of Myra in the 300s, is one of the most loved saints in Russia, and many Russian churches are named for him. His feast, December 19 in our calendar, is a day for small gifts to children in some families.

> **At home in Russian.** If your student already speaks Russian, learn the Christmas troparion Рождество́ Твоё, Христе́ Бо́же наш in Church Slavonic and what each line means.

### WORKED EXAMPLES

**Example 1.** Wish a friend Merry Christmas.

▼ **Show solution**

1. С + instrumental: Рождество́м.
2. Add Христо́вым for the full form.

**Answer:** С Рождество́м Христо́вым!

**Example 2.** Why do Russian families wait for the first star on Christmas Eve?

▼ **Show solution**

1. In memory of the star of Bethlehem.
2. They fasted until it appeared.

**Answer:** In memory of the star that led the wise men to Jesus.

### PRACTICE

1. Easy Say Merry Christmas.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   С Рождество́м!

2. Easy What is Соче́льник?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Christmas Eve.

3. Easy What is ёлка?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   A fir tree, the Christmas or New Year tree.

4. Medium On what date do most Russian Christians celebrate Christmas?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   January 7.

5. Medium What is кутья́?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Sweet wheat porridge with honey and poppy seed.

6. Medium Who is Дед Моро́з?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Grandfather Frost, who brings gifts at New Year.

7. Hard Explain why Christmas falls on January 7.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   The Russian Church keeps the Julian calendar, now 13 days behind the Gregorian.

8. Hard Translate: For unto you is born this day… a Saviour, which is Christ the Lord.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Ны́не роди́лся вам… Спаси́тель, Кото́рый есть Христо́с Госпо́дь.

### COMMON MISTAKES

- Saying Счастли́вого Рождества́ as a word-for-word Merry Christmas. Russians say С Рождество́м!
- Thinking Дед Моро́з is Santa at Christmas. He comes at New Year.

> **Make it a game · Christmas word hunt.** Hide ten picture cards of Christmas things (звезда́, ёлка, а́нгел, па́стыри, я́сли, свеча́). Players find them and name each in Russian. A correct name keeps the card; most cards wins.

> **Scripture.** “For unto you is born this day in the city of David a Saviour, which is Christ the Lord.” (Luke 2:11, KJV)
>
> Russian Synodal Bible (1876): *ибо ныне родился вам в городе Давидовом Спаситель, Который есть Христос Господь* The angel announced the best news of all: the Saviour was born.

UNIT 10 · ПРА́ЗДНИКИ: CHRISTMAS, EASTER AND THE GENITIVE · LESSON 10.2 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

# 10.2 Христо́с воскре́се! Lent and Easter

**OBJECTIVES**

- Describe Lent, Palm Sunday and Easter in Russia.
- Give and answer the Easter greeting.
- Look closely at Ivanov’s study of Christ and Mary Magdalene.

> **Warm-up.** What is the most important feast of the Christian year? For Russian Christians the answer is clear: Па́сха, Easter, the feast of feasts.

WATCH

## Russian Holidays - Easter - Пасха

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 2:47

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=HWYgi7TcKbU

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> after the core ideas; note the words for the customs.

**Note:** RussianPod101 Russian Holidays: Easter, Па́сха — Lent, Holy Week, the midnight procession, кули́ч, red eggs and Христо́с воскре́се!

---

**BACKUP VIDEO**

### Weekly Russian Words with Katya - Cooking

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 3:35

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=e2mmdF7IYuk

RussianPod101: Weekly Words with Katya, cooking (for baking the Easter bread).

**KEY TERMS**

**Па́сха (PAHS-khuh)**
Easter.

**Ве́рбное воскресе́нье (VYEHRB-nuh-yee vuhsk-ree-SYEHN-yee)**
Palm Sunday (pussy-willow Sunday).

**Вои́стину воскре́се! (vah-EES-tee-noo vahsk-RYEH-see)**
He is risen indeed!

**Вели́кий пост (vee-LEE-keey pohst)**
Great Lent.

**кули́ч (koo-LEECH)**
Tall Easter bread.

**VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK**

Russian is written in Cyrillic. The mark over a vowel (молоко́) shows the stressed syllable, the one said loudest; it is a teaching mark, not part of normal spelling. In the sound guides the stressed syllable is in capitals: mah-lah-KOH.

## Па́сха

**PAHS-khuh**

noun · feminine

Easter

## пост

**pohst**

noun · masculine

fast, Lent

## ве́рба

**VYEHR-buh**

noun · feminine

pussy willow

## кули́ч

**koo-LEECH**

noun · masculine

Easter bread

## воскре́снуть

**vahsk-RYEHS-noot**

verb

to rise from the dead (воскре́с)

## вои́стину

**vah-EES-tee-noo**

adverb

truly, indeed

### CORE IDEAS

**Lent.** Вели́кий пост, Great Lent, lasts about seven weeks before Easter. Many Russian Christians give up meat, milk and eggs, pray more and go to church often. Palm Sunday is Ве́рбное воскресе́нье: palm trees do not grow in Russia, so people bring branches of pussy willow (ве́рба) to church in memory of Jesus' entry into Jerusalem. The last week before Easter, Страстна́я неде́ля, remembers His suffering and death.

**Easter night.** The Easter service begins near midnight. The church is dark; then the people walk around the outside of the church with candles, and when they come back to the doors the priest proclaims Христо́с воскре́се! and everyone answers Вои́стину воскре́се! The greeting, in Church Slavonic, is used instead of hello for forty days. Its words echo the disciples' joy in Luke 24:34, The Lord is risen indeed.

**Easter foods.** Families bake a tall round кули́ч, make the sweet cottage-cheese dessert called па́сха, marked with the letters ХВ (Христо́с воскре́се), and dye eggs, especially red. Baskets of these foods are blessed in church. Paul wrote: Но Христо́с воскре́с из мёртвых, пе́рвенец из уме́рших. (But now is Christ risen from the dead, and become the firstfruits of them that slept.)

PICTURE STUDY



*The Appearance of Christ to Mary Magdalene after the Resurrection (study)*, Alexander Ivanov, about 1833 · Oil on canvas · State Russian Museum, St. Petersburg

Image: Wikimedia Commons, public domain

This is a smaller first version, a study, for Ivanov's large painting of 1835, which earned him the title of Academician; in the final version he left out the angel.

**Look closely**

- Who is kneeling, and who is standing?
- What is the angel doing?
- What is Jesus doing with His hand?
- How does the painter use light and dark?

**Talk about it**

1. Read John 20:11–18. Which moment did Ivanov paint?
2. Why is the Resurrection the center of the Christian year?

ACTIVITY

## Easter table

With your family, prepare a Russian Easter table.

**You will need**

- A sweet bread recipe
- Eggs and food coloring
- Icing

**Steps**

1. Bake a tall sweet bread (a кули́ч) in a tall can or pan.
2. Ice it and write XB on top.
3. Dye eggs red.
4. Serve the table and greet everyone with Христо́с воскре́се!

**Tips**

- Write a menu card for the table in Russian.

**Check your work**

☐ I helped prepare the table.

☐ I gave and answered the greeting in Russian.

RUSSIAN NOTEBOOK

1. In your notebook, write the Easter greeting and answer, ten Lent and Easter words, and 1 Corinthians 15:20 in Russian.

> **From history.** Because the Russian Church calculates Easter by the Julian calendar, Russian Easter usually falls one to five weeks after Western Easter, though some years the two fall on the same Sunday.

> **At home in Russian.** If your student already speaks Russian, sing the Easter troparion Христо́с воскре́се из ме́ртвых and learn its meaning line by line.

### WORKED EXAMPLES

**Example 1.** Answer Христо́с воскре́се!

▼ **Show solution**

1. Вои́стину means truly.
2. Repeat воскре́се.

**Answer:** Вои́стину воскре́се!

**Example 2.** Why do Russians bring pussy willow on Palm Sunday?

▼ **Show solution**

1. Palm trees do not grow in Russia.
2. The willow is among the first to bud in spring.

**Answer:** Pussy willow takes the place of palm branches in memory of Jesus' entry into Jerusalem.

### PRACTICE

1. Easy Give the Easter greeting.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Христо́с воскре́се!

2. Easy What is Па́сха?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Easter.

3. Easy What is кули́ч?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   A tall round Easter bread.

4. Medium What is Вели́кий пост?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Great Lent.

5. Medium What letters are on the па́сха dessert, and what do they mean?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   ХВ: Христо́с воскре́се, Christ is risen.

6. Medium How long is the Easter greeting used?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Forty days.

7. Hard Describe the Easter night service in two sentences.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Лю́ди иду́т вокру́г це́ркви со свеча́ми. Свяще́нник говори́т: Христо́с воскре́се!

8. Hard Translate: But now is Christ risen from the dead.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Но Христо́с воскре́с из мёртвых.

### COMMON MISTAKES

- Answering Христо́с воскре́се! with спаси́бо. The answer is Вои́стину воскре́се!
- Writing the feast with a small letter. Па́сха the feast is capitalized; па́сха the dessert is not.

> **Make it a game · Egg tapping.** A Russian Easter game: each player holds a hard-boiled dyed egg and taps it against another player's egg, saying Христо́с воскре́се! — Вои́стину воскре́се! The egg that does not crack wins and goes on to the next player.

> **Scripture.** "But now is Christ risen from the dead, and become the firstfruits of them that slept." (1 Corinthians 15:20, KJV)
>
> Russian Synodal Bible (1876): *Но Христос воскрес из мертвых, первенец из умерших*
> Christ's resurrection is the firstfruits: the promise that His people too will rise.

# 10.3 У меня́ нет вре́мени: The Genitive

**OBJECTIVES**

- Form the genitive singular.
- Use the genitive after нет, не́ было and не бу́дет.
- Use the genitive for of.

> **Warm-up.** The angel at the tomb said, He is not here. In Russian: Его́ нет здесь. That его́ is a new case, the genitive. Today you learn it.

**WATCH**

## Weekly Russian Words with Katya - In your Wallet

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 2:54

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=XRbPDpDiokc

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> after the core ideas; listen for нет and the noun after it.

**Note:** RussianPod101: Weekly Words with Katya, in your wallet.

---

**BACKUP VIDEO**

**Grammar Features in Russian You Need to Know | Daily Russian Conversations #18**

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 4:11

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=x_2JdQWGXxs

RussianPod101 Daily Russian Conversations: grammar features of Russian, including the cases.

**KEY TERMS**

**нет + genitive (nyeht)**
There is no…; I don't have….

**не́ было (nyeh bih-luh)**
There was no….

**не бу́дет (nee BOO-deet)**
There will be no….

**вре́мени (VRYEH-mee-nee)**
Of time (genitive of вре́мя).

**кни́га бра́та (KNEE-guh BRAH-tuh)**

My brother’s book.

### VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Russian is written in Cyrillic. The mark over a vowel (молоко́) shows the stressed syllable, the one said loudest; it is a teaching mark, not part of normal spelling. In the sound guides the stressed syllable is in capitals: mah-lah-KOH.

| | |
|---|---|
| **нет**<br>**nyeht**<br>word<br>there is no, I don’t have (+ genitive) | **не́ было**<br>**nyeh bih-luh**<br>phrase<br>there was no (+ genitive) |
| **не бу́дет**<br>**nee BOO-deet**<br>phrase<br>there will be no (+ genitive) | **вре́мя**<br>**VRYEH-muh**<br>noun · neuter<br>time (вре́мени) |
| **мно́го**<br>**MNOH-guh**<br>adverb<br>a lot of (+ genitive) | **ма́ло**<br>**MAH-luh**<br>adverb<br>little, few (+ genitive) |

### CORE IDEAS

**The endings.** Masculine nouns in a consonant add -а: брат → бра́та, хлеб → хле́ба; in -й or -ь, -я: чай → ча́я, учи́тель → учи́теля. Neuter -о → -а, -е → -я: окно́ → окна́, мо́ре → мо́ря. Feminine -а → -ы, -я → -и, -ь → -и: вода́ → воды́, неде́ля → неде́ли, ночь → но́чи. After г, к, х, ж, ш, ч, щ write -и: кни́га → кни́ги. Pronouns: меня́, тебя́, его́, её, нас, вас, их. Вре́мя is special: вре́мени.

**Нет.** To say there is no or I do not have, use нет + genitive: У меня́ нет бра́та. Здесь нет воды́. Его́ нет до́ма. In the past: не́ было (always neuter): Вчера́ не́ было дождя́. In the future: не бу́дет: За́втра не бу́дет шко́лы. Paul wrote: Ита́к нет

ны́не никако́го осужде́ния тем, кото́рые во Христе́ Иису́се (There is therefore now no condemnation to them which are in Christ Jesus).

**Of.** The genitive also means of and shows the owner, after the thing: кни́га бра́та (my brother's book), дом ба́бушки (Grandmother's house), центр го́рода (the center of the city), Ева́нгелие от Луки́. Also after quantity words: мно́го вре́мени, ма́ло воды́, стака́н ча́я (a glass of tea).

ACTIVITY

### What is missing?

Write and act out a short skit about a forgetful traveler.

**You will need**

- Paper
- A suitcase or bag with a few items

**Steps**

1. Pack a bag with some travel items and leave others out.
2. Write a skit where the traveler checks: У меня́ есть паспо́рт… У меня́ нет биле́та!
3. Use the genitive at least eight times, including не́ было.
4. Perform the skit for your family.

**Tips**

- Add a scene at a hotel: Здесь нет полоте́нца!

**Check your work**

- ☐ My skit uses the genitive eight times.
- ☐ I performed it in Russian.

RUSSIAN NOTEBOOK

1. In your notebook, write a genitive chart for all three genders and ten sentences with нет, не́ было, не бу́дет and of.

> **From history.** Russian Bibles title the Gospels Ева́нгелие от Матфе́я, от Ма́рка, от Луки́, от Иоа́нна: the Gospel from Matthew, Mark, Luke and John, with the genitive after от.

> **At home in Russian.** If your student already speaks Russian, learn the genitive plural endings (-ов, -ей, none) and practice with numbers five and up.

### WORKED EXAMPLES

**Example 1.** Say "There is no bread."

▼ **Show solution**

1. Хлеб, masculine: add -а.
2. Нет + genitive.

**Answer:** Нет хле́ба.

**Example 2.** Say "Yesterday there was no teacher."

▼ **Show solution**

1. Past: не́ было.
2. Учи́тель → учи́теля.

**Answer:** Вчера́ не́ было учи́теля.

### PRACTICE

1. Easy Put in the genitive: брат, стол.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Бра́та, стола́.

2. Easy Put in the genitive: ма́ма, кни́га.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Ма́мы, кни́ги.

3. Easy Say “I don’t have a sister.”

▼ **Show answer**

У меня́ нет сестры́.

4. Medium Say “He is not at home.”

▼ **Show answer**

Его́ нет до́ма.

5. Medium Say “There was no snow.”

▼ **Show answer**

Не́ было сне́га.

6. Medium Say “Grandfather’s house.”

▼ **Show answer**

Дом де́душки.

7. Hard Say “Tomorrow there will be no rain.”

▼ **Show answer**

За́втра не бу́дет дождя́.

8. Hard Translate: There is therefore now no condemnation.

▼ **Show answer**

Ита́к нет ны́не никако́го осужде́ния.

### COMMON MISTAKES

- Keeping the dictionary form after нет. After нет use the genitive: нет вре́мени.
- Making не́ было agree. It is always neuter: не́ было сестры́, не́ было бра́та.

> **Make it a game · What is missing?.** Lay out ten objects and name them. The student closes his eyes while a parent removes one. The student says what is missing: Нет ло́жки! A correct genitive scores; then switch.

> **Scripture.** “There is therefore now no condemnation to them which are in Christ Jesus, who walk not after the flesh, but after the Spirit.” (Romans 8:1, KJV)
>
> Russian Synodal Bible (1876): *Итак нет ныне никакого осуждения тем, которые во Христе Иисусе* For those who belong to Christ, there is no condemnation, a great нет in the Bible.

UNIT 11

# Бы́ло: The Past Tense, Pushkin and Tolstoy

Lesson 11.1 teaches the past tense: the -л endings for he, she, it and they, был, была́, бы́ло, бы́ли, and Genesis 1:1.

Lesson 11.2 introduces Pushkin, reads the first lines of Winter Morning, and connects his poem The Prophet to Isaiah 6:8, with Kiprensky’s portrait.

Lesson 11.3 retells Tolstoy’s What Men Live By in simple Russian and learns what the Bible says about love from 1 John 4:16.

### PREREQUISITES

- Units 1–10. The present tense of verbs (Units 4 and 9).

### MASTERY CHECKLIST

- ☐ I can form and use the past tense of verbs.
- ☐ I can tell in Russian what I did yesterday.
- ☐ I can say who Pushkin and Tolstoy were and recite the first lines of Winter Morning.
- ☐ I can retell What Men Live By simply in Russian.

### OPTIONAL BOOKS AND RESOURCES FOR THIS UNIT

- **Wiktionary (Russian entries)**: Free online: every Russian word with its stress, meaning, endings and often a recording by a native speaker.
- **Forvo**: Free pronunciation library: hear any Russian word said by native speakers (link only).

Not required. Every activity in this unit works with paper, pencil, scissors and the free links below. School Launch is independent and free.

### LESSONS IN THIS UNIT

| | |
|---|---|
| **11.1 Вчера́ я чита́л: The Past Tense** | 4 sessions of 40–50 minutes |
| **11.2 Моро́з и со́лнце: Alexander Pushkin** | 4 sessions of 40–50 minutes |
| **11.3 Чем лю́ди жи́вы: Tolstoy's Story** | 4 sessions of 40–50 minutes |

## Unit 11 test

Questions 1–2 are oral: the parent asks and marks. The rest are written, without notes. 50 points.

1. **5 pts**
   Oral: Tell in five sentences what you did yesterday.
2. **5 pts**
   Oral: Recite the first two lines of Winter Morning.
3. **5 pts**
   Put into the past (он, она́, они́): чита́ть.
4. **5 pts**
   Put into the past (он, она́, оно́, они́): быть.
5. **5 pts**
   Translate: Yesterday Anna wrote a letter.

6. **5 pts**

   Translate: Where were you? (to a boy, then to a girl)

7. **5 pts**

   Who was Pushkin? Give three facts.

8. **5 pts**

   Which Bible chapter is behind Pushkin's poem The Prophet?

9. **5 pts**

   What three questions must the angel Michael answer in Tolstoy's story, and what are the answers?

10. **5 pts**

    Translate: Бог есть любо́вь.

**ANSWER KEY**

1. For example: Вчера́ я встал в семь часо́в. Я чита́л кни́гу. Я игра́л в футбо́л. Ве́чером мы у́жинали. Я спал.
2. Моро́з и со́лнце; день чуде́сный! Ещё ты дре́млешь, друг преле́стный.
3. Он чита́л, она́ чита́ла, они́ чита́ли.
4. Был, была́, бы́ло, бы́ли.
5. Вчера́ А́нна писа́ла письмо́.
6. Где ты был? Где ты была́?
7. Russia's greatest poet (1799–1837); his nanny told him fairy tales; he wrote fairy tales in verse, Winter Morning and The Prophet.
8. Isaiah 6, where the seraph touches Isaiah's lips with a coal and God sends him.
9. What dwells in people? Love. What is not given to people? To know what they need. What do people live by? Love.
10. God is love.

Printable answer key (PDF, for the parent)

### UNIT CHALLENGE: MY READING JOURNAL

Keep a Russian reading journal for the unit: copy and illustrate Winter Morning (first stanza), write a five-sentence retelling of What Men Live By in Russian, and write five sentences in the past tense about a day in your life. Recite the poem aloud.

| LOOK FOR | WHAT IT MEANS |
|---|---|
| **Speaking** | The student recites the poem and reads the retelling aloud. |
| **Accuracy** | Past tense forms and spelling are correct. |
| **Product** | The journal is complete and illustrated. |
| **Effort** | The work is careful, complete and on time. |

### UNIT 11 · БЫ́ЛО: THE PAST TENSE, PUSHKIN AND TOLSTOY · LESSON 11.1 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

# 11.1 Вчера́ я чита́л: The Past Tense

### OBJECTIVES

- Form the past tense.
- Use был, была́, бы́ло, бы́ли.
- Tell what you did yesterday.

> **Warm-up.** The Bible begins in the past tense: In the beginning God created. In Russian: В нача́ле сотвори́л Бог. That -л ending is the past tense, and it is easier than the present.

WATCH

## Using Plural Verbs in the Past Tense in Russian | Daily Russian Conversations #13

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 4:07

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=dn8HanEOL34

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> after the core ideas; listen for the -л endings.

**Note:** RussianPod101 Daily Russian Conversations #13: plural verbs in the past tense.

---

**BACKUP VIDEO**

### Russian Verbs and How Many Tenses They Have | Daily Russian Conversations #04

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 4:25

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Zcbyw3fCzzg

RussianPod101 Daily Russian Conversations #4: Russian verbs and how many tenses they have.

**KEY TERMS**

**-л, -ла, -ло, -ли (l lah loh lee)**
Past tense endings.

**был, была́ (bihl bih-LAH)**
Was (he, she).

**бы́ли (BIH-lee)**
Were.

**вчера́ (vchee-RAH)**
Yesterday.

**бы́ло (BIH-luh)**
Was (it), there was.

**VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK**

Russian is written in Cyrillic. The mark over a vowel (молоко́) shows the stressed syllable, the one said loudest; it is a teaching mark, not part of normal spelling. In the sound guides the stressed syllable is in capitals: mah-lah-KOH.

## вчера́

**vchee-RAH**

adverb

yesterday

## был

**bihl**

verb · past

was (masculine)

## была́

**bih-LAH**

verb · past

was (feminine)

## бы́ли

**BIH-lee**

verb · past

were

## сотвори́ть

**suht-vah-REET**

verb

to create

## пото́м

**pah-TOHM**

adverb

then, afterward

### CORE IDEAS

**Forming it.** Take the infinitive, drop -ть and add -л for a man or boy, -ла for a woman or girl, -ло for it, -ли for they or вы: чита́ть → чита́л, чита́ла, чита́ло, чита́ли. Russian has only one past tense, and the ending shows who did it by gender and number, not by person: я чита́л (a boy speaking), я чита́ла (a girl speaking), мы чита́ли.

**Быть.** In the present Russians leave out is; in the past it comes back: Я был до́ма. Ма́ма была́ в це́ркви. Мы бы́ли в па́рке. Reflexive verbs keep -ся after a consonant and -сь after a vowel: он учи́лся, она́ учи́лась. A few verbs are irregular: идти́ → шёл, шла, шли; есть → ел, е́ла; мочь → мог, могла́.

**Telling a story.** With time words you can tell about your day: Вчера́ я встал в семь часо́в. Пото́м я за́втракал. Днём я игра́л в футбо́л, а ве́чером чита́л. The first verse of the Bible uses the past tense: В нача́ле сотвори́л Бог не́бо и зе́млю. (In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth.)

ACTIVITY

## Yesterday comic

Draw a six-panel comic strip of what you did yesterday, with past-tense captions.

**You will need**

- Paper divided into six boxes
- Pencils

**Steps**

1. Draw one thing you did in each box, from morning to night.
2. Write a caption in each: Я встал… Я за́втракал….
3. Add the time words у́тром, днём, ве́чером.
4. Read the comic aloud to your family.

**Tips**

- Draw a second strip about what your mother or sister did, using -ла forms.

**Check your work**

☐ Every caption has a correct past tense.

☐ I read my comic aloud.

RUSSIAN NOTEBOOK

1. In your notebook, write the past tense of ten verbs (он, она́, они́) and eight sentences about yesterday.

> **From history.** Genesis 1:1 in the 1876 Synodal Bible puts the verb before the subject, В нача́ле сотвори́л Бог, just as the Hebrew does. Russian word order is free enough to follow the original closely.

> **At home in Russian.** If your student already speaks Russian, learn the difference between чита́л and прочита́л (imperfective and perfective past) and write five pairs.

### WORKED EXAMPLES

**Example 1.** Say “She was reading.”

▼ **Show solution**

1. Чита́ть: drop -ть.
2. Feminine: -ла.

**Answer:** Она́ чита́ла.

**Example 2.** A girl says “I studied yesterday.”

▼ **Show solution**

1. Учи́ться, reflexive.
2. Feminine -ла + -сь after the vowel.

**Answer:** Вчера́ я учи́лась.

### PRACTICE

1. Easy Past of писа́ть for он.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Писа́л.

2. Easy Past of говори́ть for она́.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Говори́ла.

3. Easy Past of быть for они́.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Бы́ли.

4. Medium Say “We were at home.”

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Мы бы́ли до́ма.

5. Medium A boy says “I played football.”

▼ **Show answer**

Я игра́л в футбо́л.

6. Medium Say “Where were you?” to a girl.

▼ **Show answer**

Где ты была́?

7. Hard Say “He went to school (on foot).”

▼ **Show answer**

Он шёл в шко́лу.

8. Hard Translate: In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth.

▼ **Show answer**

В нача́ле сотвори́л Бог не́бо и зе́млю.

### COMMON MISTAKES

- Using the person ending in the past. The past changes for gender and number only: я чита́л, ты чита́л, он чита́л.
- A girl saying я был. A girl says я была́.

> **Make it a game · Who did it?.** One player acts out something done yesterday (reading, cooking, sleeping). The others guess with the past tense: Ты чита́л? Ты гото́вила? The first correct guess acts next.

> **Scripture.** “In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth.” (Genesis 1:1, KJV)
>
> Russian Synodal Bible (1876): *В начале сотворил Бог небо и землю* Everything began with God, who made it all.

# 11.2 Моро́з и со́лнце: ALEXANDER PUSHKIN

**OBJECTIVES**

- Say who Pushkin was.
- Read and recite the first lines of Winter Morning.
- Connect The Prophet to Isaiah 6.

> **Warm-up.** Every Russian child learns Pushkin's poems by heart. Today you join them, with the first lines of a poem about a sunny winter morning.

**WATCH**

## Learn the Top 10 Words for Connecting Thoughts in Russian

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 4:30

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=1CBoYP45dLM

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> before the recitation; practice the sounds.

**Note:** RussianPod101: top ten words for connecting thoughts (useful for reading poems and stories).

---

**BACKUP VIDEO**

**Learn the Top 10 Hardest Russian Words to Pronounce**

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 4:52

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=2dbuynYNBz0

RussianPod101: top ten hardest Russian words to pronounce (practice before reciting).

**KEY TERMS**

**Пу́шкин (POOSH-keen)**
Alexander Pushkin (1799–1837).

**стихи́ (stee-KHEE)**
Poems, poetry.

**по́эт (pah-EHT)**
Poet.

**моро́з (mah-ROHS)**
Frost.

**чуде́сный (choo-DYEHS-nihy)**

Wonderful.

### VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Russian is written in Cyrillic. The mark over a vowel (молоко́) shows the stressed syllable, the one said loudest; it is a teaching mark, not part of normal spelling. In the sound guides the stressed syllable is in capitals: mah-lah-KOH.

**по́э́т**
**pah-EHT**
noun · masculine
poet

**стихи́**
**stee-KHEE**
noun · plural
poems

**моро́з**
**mah-ROHS**
noun · masculine
frost

**чуде́сный**
**choo-DYEHS-nihy**
adjective
wonderful

**проро́к**
**prah-ROHK**
noun · masculine
prophet

**посла́ть**
**pahs-LAHT**
verb
to send

### CORE IDEAS

**The poet.** Алекса́ндр Серге́евич Пу́шкин was born in Moscow in 1799. He studied at the Lyceum at Tsarskoye Selo near St. Petersburg, and as a boy he loved the Russian fairy tales his nanny Ари́на Родио́новна told him. He wrote poems, fairy tales in verse such as The Tale of Tsar Saltan, and the novel in verse Eugene Onegin. He died in 1837 after being wounded in a duel. Russians call him the father of the modern Russian literary language.

**Winter Morning (1829).** The poem begins: Моро́з и со́лнце; день чуде́сный! / Ещё ты дре́млешь, друг преле́стный (Frost and sun; a wonderful day! You are still dozing, my lovely friend). The poet wakes his friend to see the snow shining in the

sun. Notice how Pushkin builds a whole picture from a few nouns, моро́з, со́лнце, день, and one adjective.

**The Prophet (1826).** Pushkin's poem Проро́к retells Isaiah 6: a six-winged seraph touches the poet's lips, and the voice of God sends him to set men's hearts on fire with the word. Isaiah answered God's call: вот я, пошли́ меня́ (Here am I; send me). The poem shows how deeply the Bible shaped Russian literature.

**PICTURE STUDY**



*Portrait of Alexander Pushkin*, Orest Kiprensky, 1827 · Oil on canvas · State Tretyakov Gallery, Moscow
Image: Wikimedia Commons, public domain

Kiprensky was the finest Russian portrait painter of his day. The small statue behind Pushkin is a muse, the old symbol of poetry, to show that he is a poet.

**Look closely**

- What is Pushkin wearing over his shoulder?
- Where is he looking? What might he be thinking?
- Find the statue in the background. Why is it there?
- How old does he look?

**Talk about it**

1. Why do painters add objects that tell us about a person?
2. Which poem would you want to learn by heart?

ACTIVITY

## Recitation and illustration

Learn the first stanza of Winter Morning, illustrate it and recite it.

**You will need**

- A printed copy of the first stanza of Winter Morning (Зи́мнее у́тро)
- Paper and paints

**Steps**

1. Read the stanza slowly with the stress marks.
2. Learn two lines a day.
3. Paint the scene: snow, sun and a sleeping friend.
4. Recite the stanza from memory for your family, holding up the painting.

**Tips**

- Record your recitation.

**Check your work**

- ☐ I recite the first two lines from memory with correct stress.
- ☐ My painting matches the poem.

RUSSIAN NOTEBOOK

1. In your notebook, copy the first two lines of Winter Morning with stress marks and five facts about Pushkin in Russian.

> **From history.** Pushkin's fairy tale The Tale of Tsar Saltan became an opera by Nikolai Rimsky-Korsakov (1900); its most famous piece is The Flight of the Bumblebee, the music for the moment the prince turns into a bumblebee.

> **At home in Russian.** If your student already speaks Russian, read Pushkin's Tale of the Fisherman and the Fish and retell it.

### WORKED EXAMPLES

**Example 1.** Say “Pushkin wrote poems.”

▼ **Show solution**

1. Писа́ть: drop -ть, add -л.
2. Стихи́ is plural.

**Answer:** Пу́шкин писа́л стихи́.

**Example 2.** Translate: Here am I; send me.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Вот я.
2. Пошли́ is the command of посла́ть.

**Answer:** Вот я, пошли́ меня́.

### PRACTICE

1. Easy When was Pushkin born?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   In 1799.

2. Easy What does моро́з mean?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Frost.

3. Easy What does поэ́т mean?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Poet.

4. Medium Who told Pushkin fairy tales as a boy?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   His nanny Ари́на Родио́новна.

5. Medium Name one of Pushkin's fairy tales.

▼ **Show answer**

The Tale of Tsar Saltan.

6. Medium Translate: Моро́з и со́лнце; день чуде́сный!

▼ **Show answer**

Frost and sun; a wonderful day!

7. Hard What Bible chapter does The Prophet retell?

▼ **Show answer**

Isaiah 6.

8. Hard Why is Pushkin called the father of the modern Russian literary language?

▼ **Show answer**

He wrote in a living Russian that joined the speech of the people with the language of books, and later writers followed him.

### COMMON MISTAKES

- Reading poetry without the stress. Stress gives the rhythm: моро́з, со́лнце, чуде́сный.
- Forgetting that the past ending agrees with the subject. Пу́шкин писа́л, but Ари́на Родио́новна расска́зывала.

> **Make it a game · Rhyme catch.** A parent says a Russian word; the student answers with a word that rhymes or shares the stressed ending (моро́з — моро́з? нос! день — пень). Three in a row earns a point.

> **Scripture.** "Also I heard the voice of the Lord, saying, Whom shall I send, and who will go for us? Then said I, Here am I; send me." (Isaiah 6:8, KJV)
>
> Russian Synodal Bible (1876): *вот я, пошли меня* When God called, Isaiah answered at once. Pushkin's poem The Prophet retells this chapter.

# 11.3 Чем лю́ди жи́вы: Tolstoy's Story

**OBJECTIVES**

- Say who Leo Tolstoy was.
- Retell What Men Live By in simple Russian.
- Learn 1 John 4:16 in Russian.

> **Warm-up.** What do people live by? Food? Money? Work? Leo Tolstoy wrote a story to answer that question, and he took his answer from the Bible.

**WATCH**

## Weekly Russian Words with Katya - Personalities

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 2:03

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=zAunNWjxYiI

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> after the story; choose words for Семён, Матрёна and Михаи́л.

**Note:** RussianPod101: Weekly Words with Katya, personality words (for describing the people in the story).

---

**BACKUP VIDEO**

### Learn the Top Adjective that Describes Your Personality Best in Russian

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 3:08

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=IiDYpPU_VHg

RussianPod101: top adjectives that describe your personality.

**KEY TERMS**

**Толсто́й (tahls-TOHY)**
Leo Tolstoy (1828–1910).

**расска́з (rahss-KAHS)**
Short story.

**а́нгел (AHN-geel)**
Angel.

**сапо́жник (sah-POHZH-neek)**
Shoemaker.

**любо́вь (lyoo-BOHF)**

Love.

### VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Russian is written in Cyrillic. The mark over a vowel (молоко́) shows the stressed syllable, the one said loudest; it is a teaching mark, not part of normal spelling. In the sound guides the stressed syllable is in capitals: mah-lah-KOH.

**расска́з**
**rahss-KAHS**
noun · masculine
short story

**писа́тель**
**pee-SAH-teel**
noun · masculine
writer

**а́нгел**
**AHN-geel**
noun · masculine
angel

**сапо́жник**
**sah-POHZH-neek**
noun · masculine
shoemaker

**любо́вь**
**lyoo-BOHF**
noun · feminine
love

**помо́чь**
**pah-MOHCH**
verb
to help (помо́г)

### CORE IDEAS

**The writer.** Лев Никола́евич Толсто́й was born in 1828 on his family estate Я́сная Поля́на south of Moscow. He wrote the great novels War and Peace and Anna Karenina, and later many short stories for ordinary readers. In his later years he rejected many teachings of the Orthodox Church and was excommunicated in 1901, but stories like this one are loved for the Bible truth at their center.

**The story (1881).** A poor shoemaker, Семён, finds a man sitting naked by a chapel in winter and brings him home. His wife Матрёна is angry at first, then feeds him. The stranger, Михаи́л, works with Семён for six years and smiles only three times. At

the end he tells them he is an angel. God sent him to earth to learn three things: what dwells in people, what is not given to people, and what people live by.

**The answers.** In people dwells love (Матрёна's pity). It is not given to people to know what they need (a rich man orders boots to last a year and dies that day). And people live not by caring for themselves but by love. Tolstoy put Bible verses at the head of the story, among them: Бог есть любóвь, и пребывáющий в любви́ пребывáет в Бóге, и Бог в нём. In simple Russian: Семён был бéдный. Он помóг человéку. Человéк был áнгел.

ACTIVITY

## Story in pictures

Make a picture book of What Men Live By with one Russian sentence on each page.

**You will need**

- Six sheets of paper folded into a booklet
- Colored pencils

**Steps**

1. Plan six scenes: the chapel, the angry wife, the work, the rich man, the twin girls, the angel.
2. Draw each scene.
3. Write one past-tense sentence under each in Russian.
4. Read the book aloud to a younger child or a parent.

**Tips**

- Add a last page with 1 John 4:16 in Russian.

**Check your work**

- ☐ Every page has a correct Russian sentence.
- ☐ The story is in the right order.

### RUSSIAN NOTEBOOK

1. In your notebook, write the three questions and their answers in English, five past-tense sentences retelling the story in Russian, and 1 John 4:16 in Russian.

> **From history.** Tolstoy wrote What Men Live By in 1881 as one of a series of simple stories for ordinary Russian readers; he based it on a folk legend about an angel who lived among people.

> **At home in Russian.** If your student already speaks Russian, read Tolstoy's Чем лю́ди жи́вы in a school edition and narrate one chapter.

### WORKED EXAMPLES

**Example 1.** Say "Semyon helped the man."

▼ **Show solution**

1. Помо́чь: past помо́г.
2. Помо́чь takes the dative: челове́ку.

**Answer:** Семён помо́г челове́ку.

**Example 2.** Say "Matryona was angry."

▼ **Show solution**

1. Feminine past of быть.
2. Серди́т/серди́та: angry.

**Answer:** Матрёна была́ серди́та.

### PRACTICE

1. Easy When was Tolstoy born?

▼ **Show answer**

In 1828.

2. Easy What does áнгел mean?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Angel.

3. Easy What does сапóжник mean?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Shoemaker.

4. Medium Name Tolstoy's two great novels.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   War and Peace and Anna Karenina.

5. Medium Where did Semyon find the stranger?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Sitting naked by a chapel in winter.

6. Medium Translate: Человéк был áнгел.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   The man was an angel.

7. Hard What do people live by, according to the story?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   By love.

8. Hard Translate: God is love.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Бог есть любóвь.

### COMMON MISTAKES

- Spelling Толстóй with a stress on the first syllable. It is Толстóй.
- Leaving out есть in Бог есть любóвь. In Bible language and in definitions есть is kept.

**Make it a game · Who said it?.** Write short lines from the story on cards (I will take him home. Who is this? I am an angel.). Players draw a card, read it in Russian or English and say who said it: Семён, Матрёна, Михаи́л or the rich man.

**Scripture.** “And we have known and believed the love that God hath to us. God is love; and he that dwelleth in love dwelleth in God, and God in him.” (1 John 4:16, KJV)

Russian Synodal Bible (1876): *Бог есть любовь, и пребывающий в любви пребывает в Боге, и Бог в нем* God’s love is the answer to Tolstoy’s question: we live by the love God has for us.

UNIT 12

## Росси́я: The Land, the Letters and the Bible

Lesson 12.1 teaches Russia’s land, rivers, lakes and cities and the superlative with са́мый, with Acts 17:26.

Lesson 12.2 tells how Cyril and Methodius brought letters to the Slavs, how Prince Vladimir was baptized in 988, and shows the Ostromir Gospel, with Romans 10:17.

Lesson 12.3 tells the story of the Synodal Bible, teaches the future tense with бу́ду and reviews the year, closing with John 3:16 by heart.

### PREREQUISITES

- Units 1–11. The alphabet (Unit 1) and the past tense (Unit 11).

### MASTERY CHECKLIST

- ☐ I can name Russia's main rivers, mountains, lake and cities.
- ☐ I can use

  са́мый

  to say the biggest, the longest, the deepest.
- ☐ I can tell the story of the Cyrillic alphabet and the Russian Bible.
- ☐ I can say what I will do with

  бу́ду.
- ☐ I can recite John 3:16 in Russian.

### OPTIONAL BOOKS AND RESOURCES FOR THIS UNIT

- Wiktionary (Russian entries): Free online: every Russian word with its stress, meaning, endings and often a recording by a native speaker.

Not required. Every activity in this unit works with paper, pencil, scissors and the free links below. School Launch is independent and free.

### LESSONS IN THIS UNIT


**12.1 Са́мая больша́я страна́: Russia's Land** — 4 sessions of 40–50 minutes

**12.2 Кири́лл и Мефо́дий: Letters and Faith** — 4 sessions of 40–50 minutes

**12.3 Так возлюби́л Бог мир: The Synodal Bible and the Year** — 4 sessions of 40–50 minutes

# Unit 12 test

Questions 1–2 are oral: the parent asks and marks. The rest are written, without notes. 50 points.

1. **5 pts**
   Oral: Recite John 3:16 in Russian.

2. **5 pts**
   Oral: Say three things you will do this summer.

3. **5 pts**
   Name Russia's capital, its longest river in Europe and its deepest lake.

4. **5 pts**
   Say "Russia is the biggest country in the world."

5. **5 pts**
   Who were Cyril and Methodius?

6. **5 pts**
   What happened in 988?

7. **5 pts**
   What is the Ostromir Gospel?

8. **5 pts**
   When was the complete Synodal Bible published?

9. **5 pts**
   Put into the future: я чита́ю, мы игра́ем.

10. **5 pts**
    Translate: Ита́к ве́ра от слы́шания.

**ANSWER KEY**

1. И́бо так возлюби́л Бог мир, что о́тдал Сы́на Своего́ Единоро́дного, да́бы вся́кий, ве́рующий в Него́, не поги́б, но име́л жизнь ве́чную.
2. For example: Ле́том я бу́ду чита́ть. Я бу́ду пла́вать. Я бу́ду помога́ть па́пе.
3. Москва́, Во́лга, Байка́л.
4. Росси́я — са́мая больша́я страна́ в ми́ре.
5. Brothers from Thessalonica, missionaries who in the 860s made the first Slavic alphabet and translated the Gospels for the Slavs.
6. Prince Vladimir of Kievan Rus' was baptized and brought Christianity to his people.
7. The oldest dated book written in the East Slavic lands, copied in 1056–1057.
8. In 1876.
9. Я бу́ду чита́ть, мы бу́дем игра́ть.
10. So then faith cometh by hearing.

Printable answer key (PDF, for the parent)

**UNIT CHALLENGE: MY YEAR IN RUSSIAN**

Make a booklet or poster of your year: the alphabet, ten favorite words, a page about each of Christmas and Easter, a map of Russia, the story of the letters and the Bible, and John 3:16 in Russian. Present it aloud and recite the verse.

| LOOK FOR | WHAT IT MEANS |
|---|---|
| **Speaking** | The student presents in Russian and recites John 3:16. |
| **Accuracy** | Facts, words and stress marks are correct. |
| **Product** | The booklet covers the year and is neat. |
| **Effort** | The work is careful, complete and on time. |

**UNIT 12 · РОССИ́Я: THE LAND, THE LETTERS AND THE BIBLE · LESSON 12.1 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES**

# 12.1 Са́мая больша́я страна́: Russia's Land

**OBJECTIVES**

- Name Russia's main regions, rivers, lake and cities.
- Use са́мый for superlatives.
- Learn Acts 17:26 in Russian.

> **Warm-up.** Russia is so wide that when the sun sets in the west, it is already morning in the far east. Today you take a trip across the biggest country in the world.

**WATCH**

## Weekly Russian Words with Katya - Geography

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 1:31

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=xO1H42d_Phg

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> after the core ideas; point to each place on the map.

**Note:** RussianPod101: Weekly Words with Katya, geography.

---

**BACKUP VIDEO**

**Learn the Top 10 Tourist Attractions in Russia**

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 4:41

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=_0jfL0Ssi_U

RussianPod101: the top ten tourist attractions in Russia.

**KEY TERMS**

**страна́ (strah-NAH)**
Country.

**река́ (ree-KAH)**
River.

**о́зеро (OH-zee-ruh)**
Lake.

**го́ры (GOH-rih)**
Mountains.

**са́мый (SAH-mihy)**

The most (superlative).

### VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Russian is written in Cyrillic. The mark over a vowel (молоко́) shows the stressed syllable, the one said loudest; it is a teaching mark, not part of normal spelling. In the sound guides the stressed syllable is in capitals: mah-lah-KOH.

| | |
|---|---|
| **страна́**<br>**strah-NAH**<br>noun · feminine<br>country | **река́**<br>**ree-KAH**<br>noun · feminine<br>river |
| **о́зеро**<br>**OH-zee-ruh**<br>noun · neuter<br>lake | **го́ры**<br>**GOH-rih**<br>noun · plural<br>mountains |
| **са́мый**<br>**SAH-mihy**<br>adjective<br>the most | **мир**<br>**meer**<br>noun · masculine<br>world; peace |

### CORE IDEAS

**The land.** Росси́я is the largest country in the world by area. It stretches across eleven time zones, from the Baltic Sea to the Pacific Ocean. The Ура́льские го́ры (Ural Mountains) divide its European part in the west from Siberia, Сиби́рь, in the east.

**Rivers, lake and cities.** The Во́лга is the longest river in Europe. Lake Байка́л in Siberia is the deepest lake in the world and holds about a fifth of the world's fresh surface water. The capital is Москва́. Санкт-Петербу́рг on the Neva was founded by Peter the Great in 1703. Paul said God made every nation and set its bounds: От одно́й кро́ви Он произвёл весь род челове́ческий.

**Са́мый.** For the biggest, the longest, put са́мый before the adjective; it agrees like any adjective: са́мый дли́нный (masculine), са́мая больша́я (feminine), са́мое глубо́кое (neuter). Росси́я — са́мая больша́я страна́. Байка́л — са́мое глубо́кое о́зеро. Во́лга — са́мая дли́нная река́ в Евро́пе.

ACTIVITY

## Map of Russia

Draw and label a map of Russia in Russian.

**You will need**

- A large sheet of paper
- An atlas or online map
- Colored pencils

**Steps**

1. Trace the outline of Russia.
2. Draw and label the Ура́л, Во́лга, Байка́л, Москва́ and Санкт-Петербу́рг.
3. Draw the seas around it and the time zones as lines.
4. Write three са́мый sentences on the map.

**Tips**

- Add five more cities and a picture for each.

**Check your work**

☐ All labels are in Cyrillic with stress marks.

☐ My three sentences use

cá correctly.

м

ы

й

RUSSIAN NOTEBOOK

1. In your notebook, write ten geography words and six sentences with са́мый.

> **From history.** Most Russians live in the European part, west of the Urals, though Siberia makes up most of the land.

> **At home in Russian.** If your student already speaks Russian, learn the comparative (бóльше, длиннée, глýбже) and compare Russia with your own country.

### WORKED EXAMPLES

**Example 1.** Say "The Volga is the longest river in Europe."

▼ **Show solution**

1. Рекá is feminine.
2. Сáмая длúнная.

**Answer:** Вóлга — сáмая длúнная рекá в Еврóпе.

**Example 2.** Say "Moscow is the biggest city in Russia."

▼ **Show solution**

1. Гóрод is masculine.
2. В Россúи, prepositional.

**Answer:** Москвá — сáмый большóй гóрод в Россúи.

### PRACTICE

1. Easy What is the capital of Russia?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Москвá.

2. Easy What does рекá mean?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   River.

3. Easy What does óзеро mean?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Lake.

4. **Medium** Which mountains divide European Russia from Siberia?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   The Urals, Ура́льские го́ры.

5. **Medium** How many time zones does Russia cover?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Eleven.

6. **Medium** Who founded St. Petersburg, and when?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Peter the Great, in 1703.

7. **Hard** Say “Baikal is the deepest lake in the world.”

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Байка́л — са́мое глубо́кое о́зеро в ми́ре.

8. **Hard** Translate: He hath made of one blood all nations of men.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   От одно́й кро́ви Он произвёл весь род челове́ческий.

### COMMON MISTAKES

- Forgetting to make са́мый agree. Са́мая больша́я страна́, са́мое глубо́кое о́зеро.
- Saying Росси́я is in Asia only. It is in both Europe and Asia.

> **Make it a game · Geography quiz.** Point to places on your map. The other player names each in Russian and adds a са́мый sentence when he can. One point for the name, two for a correct sentence.

> **Scripture.** “And hath made of one blood all nations of men for to dwell on all the face of the earth, and hath determined the times before appointed, and the bounds of their habitation;” (Acts 17:26, KJV)
>
> Russian Synodal Bible (1876): *От одной крови Он произвел весь род человеческий* God made every nation and set the places where people live.

# 12.2 Кири́лл и Мефо́дий: Letters and Faith

**OBJECTIVES**

- Tell how the Slavs received an alphabet.
- Tell what happened in 988.
- Look closely at the Ostromir Gospel.

> **Warm-up.** You learned the Cyrillic alphabet in September. Where did it come from? The answer begins with two brothers who wanted the Slavs to hear the Gospel in their own language.

**WATCH**

### What's the Russian Alphabet Called and Where Does It Come From?

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 2:33

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=n89GKM2F3ic

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> after the core ideas.

**Note:** RussianPod101: what the Russian alphabet is called and where it comes from.

---

**BACKUP VIDEO**

### Learn Russian - Introduction to Russian Writing

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 3:18

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Ao4NKQT_CMM

RussianPod101: introduction to Russian writing — the Cyrillic script and its 33 letters.

**KEY TERMS**

**а́збука (AHZ-boo-kuh)**
Alphabet (from the first letters, аз and бу́ки).

**кири́ллица (kee-REEL-lee-tsuh)**
The Cyrillic alphabet.

**Креще́ние Руси́ (kree-SHCHEH-nee-yee roo-SEE)**
The Baptism of Rus' (988).

**ве́ра (VYEH-ruh)**
Faith.

**Ева́нгелие (yee-VAHN-gee-lee-yee)**
Gospel.

### VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Russian is written in Cyrillic. The mark over a vowel (молоко́) shows the stressed syllable, the one said loudest; it is a teaching mark, not part of normal spelling. In the sound guides the stressed syllable is in capitals: mah-lah-KOH.

| | |
|---|---|
| **а́збука**<br>**AHZ-boo-kuh**<br>noun · feminine<br>alphabet | **бу́ква**<br>**BOOK-vuh**<br>noun · feminine<br>letter |
| **Ева́нгелие**<br>**yee-VAHN-gee-lee-yee**<br>noun · neuter<br>Gospel | **ве́ра**<br>**VYEH-ruh**<br>noun · feminine<br>faith |
| **князь**<br>**knyahs**<br>noun · masculine<br>prince | **давно́**<br>**dahv-NOH**<br>adverb<br>long ago |

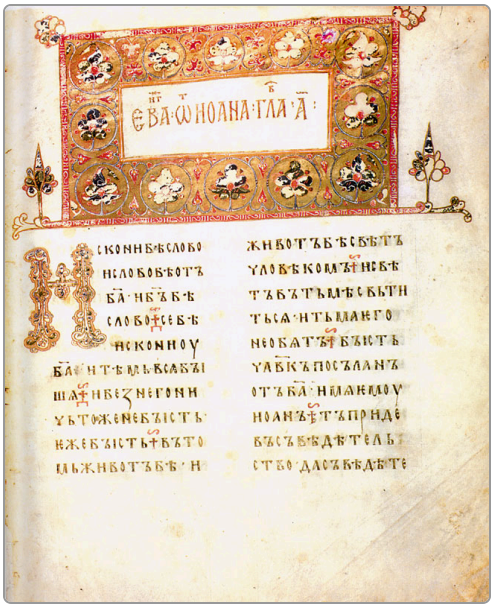
### CORE IDEAS

**Two brothers.** Кири́лл (Cyril) and Мефо́дий (Methodius) were brothers from Thessalonica in Greece. In the 860s they went as missionaries to the Slavs of Moravia. Cyril made the first Slavic alphabet, the Glagolitic, and the brothers translated the Gospels and the church services into Slavonic. Later their students in Bulgaria made a simpler alphabet from Greek letters and named it кири́ллица, Cyrillic, in honor of their teacher.

**988.** Князь Влади́мир, Prince Vladimir of Kievan Rus', the land of the Eastern Slavs, was baptized and in 988 called his people to be baptized in the river Dnieper. With the faith came books, churches, icons and the Slavonic Bible readings written in Cyrillic. Paul wrote: Ита́к ве́ра от слы́шания, а слы́шание от сло́ва Бо́жия. (So then faith cometh by hearing, and hearing by the word of God.)

**The first books.** The oldest dated book of the East Slavs is the Остромѝрово Ева́нгелие, the Ostromir Gospel, copied by Deacon Gregory in 1056–1057 for Ostromir, governor of Novgorod. It holds the Gospel readings for the church year and begins with John 1, In the beginning was the Word. In simple Russian: Кири́лл и Мефо́дий жи́ли давно́. Они́ написа́ли а́збуку.

**PICTURE STUDY**



*The Ostromir Gospel: opening of the Gospel of John*, Deacon Gregory (scribe), 1056–1057 · Ink, paint and gold on parchment · National Library of Russia, St. Petersburg

Image: Wikimedia Commons, public domain

This page begins the Gospel of John. In the old Church Slavonic language it says In the beginning was the Word. Gregory wrote at the end that he finished the book in seven months.

**Look closely**

- What colors do you see in the frame?
- Find the big decorated first letter.
- Which Cyrillic letters can you recognize from this year?
- How is this writing like and unlike printed Russian today?

**Talk about it**

1. Why would someone spend seven months copying a book by hand?
2. Why did the brothers think the Slavs needed the Gospel in their own language?

ACTIVITY

## Illuminated letter

Make an illuminated first letter like the Ostromir Gospel and copy a verse beneath it.

**You will need**

- Heavy paper
- Gold or yellow paint, red and blue pencils
- A fine black pen

**Steps**

1. Choose the first word of John 1:1 in Russian, В нача́ле.
2. Draw a large decorated В with patterns and gold.
3. Copy В нача́ле бы́ло Сло́во beside it in your best Cyrillic.
4. Draw a colored frame across the top.

**Tips**

- Copy the whole verse John 1:1.

**Check your work**

- ☐ My letter is decorated and neat.
- ☐ The verse is copied correctly.

RUSSIAN NOTEBOOK

1. In your notebook, write a timeline: 863, 988, 1056–1057, 1876, with one sentence about each in English and one in Russian.

> **From history.** Cyril and Methodius are remembered in Russia, Bulgaria and other Slavic lands as the teachers of the Slavs; May 24 is their feast day in the Russian Church.

> **At home in Russian.** If your student already speaks Russian, read about the Old Church Slavonic letters ѣ, і and ѳ and why the 1918 spelling reform removed them.

### WORKED EXAMPLES

**Example 1.** Say “Cyril and Methodius wrote an alphabet.”

▼ **Show solution**

1. Past plural: -ли.
2. Написа́ть → написа́ли.

**Answer:** Кири́лл и Мефо́дий написа́ли а́збуку.

**Example 2.** Why is the alphabet called Cyrillic?

▼ **Show solution**

1. Their students named it.
2. In honor of their teacher.

**Answer:** It was named for Cyril by his students.

### PRACTICE

1. Easy What is the Russian alphabet called?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Кири́ллица.

2. Easy What does Ева́нгелие mean?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Gospel.

3. Easy What does ве́ра mean?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Faith.

4. Medium Where were Cyril and Methodius from?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Thessalonica, in Greece.

5. **Medium** Who was baptized in 988?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Prince Vladimir of Kievan Rus’.

6. **Medium** Where does the word ázбука come from?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   From the first two letters, аз and бу́ки.

7. **Hard** What is the Ostromir Gospel?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   The oldest dated East Slavic book, copied in 1056–1057.

8. **Hard** Translate: So then faith cometh by hearing.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Ита́к ве́ра от слы́шания.

### COMMON MISTAKES

- Thinking Cyril invented the Cyrillic letters as we know them. He made the Glagolitic; his students made Cyrillic.
- Calling the old book language Russian. It is Church Slavonic.

> **Make it a game · Alphabet relay.** Call out a letter name or sound; the player writes the Cyrillic letter and a word that starts with it. Go through the alphabet; count the letters each player gets right.

> **Scripture.** “So then faith cometh by hearing, and hearing by the word of God.” (Romans 10:17, KJV)
>
> Russian Synodal Bible (1876): *Итак вера от слышания, а слышание от слова Божия*
> People came to faith when they could hear God’s word in their own language.

# 12.3 Так возлюби́л Бог мир: The Synodal Bible and the Year

**OBJECTIVES**

- Tell the story of the Synodal Bible.
- Form the future tense with бу́ду.
- Recite John 3:16 in Russian.

> **Warm-up.** All year you have read verses from the 1876 Russian Bible beside the King James Version. Today you learn how that Bible was made, and you say the verse that sums up the whole Bible.

**WATCH**

## Future Tense of Russian Verbs in Russian | Daily Russian Conversations #15

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 3:37

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=CjtjvB3OjK4

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> the first after the future tense; the second for the year's review.

**Note:** RussianPod101 Daily Russian Conversations #15: the future tense of Russian verbs.

---

**BACKUP VIDEO**

**Learn Russian - Basic Bootcamp**

Learn Russian with RussianPod101.com · 5:31

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=h_jY8udIV6I

RussianPod101: Basic Bootcamp, a review of first-year Russian.

**KEY TERMS**

**Синода́льный перево́д (see-nah-DAHL-nihy pee-ree-VOHT)**
The Synodal translation (1876).

**Би́блия (BEEB-lee-yuh)**
Bible.

**бу́ду, бу́дешь… (BOO-doo BOO-deesh)**

Will (future helper).

**ле́том (LYEH-tuhm)**

In summer.

**ве́чная жизнь (VYEHCH-nuh-yuh zhihzn)**

Eternal life.

### VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Russian is written in Cyrillic. The mark over a vowel (молоко́) shows the stressed syllable, the one said loudest; it is a teaching mark, not part of normal spelling. In the sound guides the stressed syllable is in capitals: mah-lah-KOH.

## Би́блия

**BEEB-lee-yuh**

noun · feminine

Bible

## перево́д

**pee-ree-VOHT**

noun · masculine

translation

## бу́ду

**BOO-doo**

verb · future

I will (be)

## ле́том

**LYEH-tuhm**

adverb

in summer

## возлюби́ть

**vuhz-lyoo-BEET**

verb

to love (Bible word)

## ве́чный

**VYEHCH-nihy**

adjective

eternal

### CORE IDEAS

**The Synodal Bible.** For centuries Russians heard the Bible in Church Slavonic, which ordinary people found hard to understand. In the 1810s the Russian Bible Society began a translation into modern Russian, but the work was stopped. Later the Holy Synod, the governing council of the Russian Church, took it up: the New Testament appeared in 1862 and the complete Bible in 1876. This Синода́льный перево́д is still the Bible most Russian-speaking Christians read, much as English speakers have long read the King James Version.

**The future.** For most verbs you know, form the future with бу́ду + infinitive: я бу́ду, ты бу́дешь, он бу́дет, мы бу́дем, вы бу́дете, они́ бу́дут. Ле́том я бу́ду чита́ть. За́втра мы бу́дем игра́ть в футбо́л. Alone, бу́ду means will be: За́втра я бу́ду до́ма. You have now met the present, the past and the future.

**The year's verse.** The Gospel in one sentence: И́бо так возлюби́л Бог мир, что о́тдал Сы́на Своего́ Единоро́дного, да́бы вся́кий, ве́рующий в Него́, не поги́б, но име́л жизнь ве́чную. You can read every word of it now: you know the past tense (возлюби́л, о́тдал), the accusative (мир, Сы́на) and the alphabet you learned in the first week.

ACTIVITY

## Year-end recitation

Prepare and give a short program in Russian for your family.

**You will need**

- Your portfolio and notebook
- A printed copy of John 3:16 in Russian

**Steps**

1. Choose three things to present: a greeting and introduction, a poem or story, and a part of the year you liked.
2. Practice John 3:16 until you can say it from memory.
3. Give the program: introduce yourself, present, and close with John 3:16.
4. Ask your family a question in Russian at the end.

**Tips**

- Record the program to compare with your first recording in September.

**Check your work**

☐ I recited John 3:16 from memory.

☐ I spoke in Russian for two minutes.

### RUSSIAN NOTEBOOK

1. In your notebook, write John 3:16 in Russian with stress marks, six sentences in the future about the summer, and a list of your ten favorite Russian words from the year.

> **From history.** The Synodal translation kept many Church Slavonic words, such as да́бы (so that) and и́бо (for), which give it a dignified sound much like the thee and thou of the King James Version.

> **At home in Russian.** If your student already speaks Russian, learn the perfective future (прочита́ю, напишу́) and read John 3 in the Synodal Bible.

### WORKED EXAMPLES

**Example 1.** Say "In summer I will swim."

▼ **Show solution**

1. Ле́том: in summer.
2. Бу́ду + пла́вать.

**Answer:** Ле́том я бу́ду пла́вать.

**Example 2.** Say "Tomorrow they will be at church."

▼ **Show solution**

1. Они́ бу́дут.
2. В це́ркви, prepositional.

**Answer:** За́втра они́ бу́дут в це́ркви.

### PRACTICE

1. Easy Future of быть for я.

▼ **Show answer**

Бу́ду.

2. Easy Future of быть for мы.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Бу́дем.

3. Easy What does Би́блия mean?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Bible.

4. Medium Say “I will read.”

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Я бу́ду чита́ть.

5. Medium When was the complete Synodal Bible published?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   In 1876.

6. Medium Who published it?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   The Holy Synod of the Russian Church.

7. Hard Say “What will you do in summer?”

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Что ты бу́дешь де́лать ле́том?

8. Hard Translate: For God so loved the world.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   И́бо так возлюби́л Бог мир.

### COMMON MISTAKES

- Putting the infinitive in the present: я бу́ду чита́ю. Use the infinitive: я бу́ду чита́ть.
- Using бу́ду with a perfective verb. Perfective verbs make their future on their own: я прочита́ю.

**Make it a game · Year in review.** Make question cards from every unit (alphabet, family, food, town, clothes, weather, time, holidays, past tense, Russia). Players draw and answer in Russian. Two points for a full answer, one for a partial.

**Scripture.** “For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life.” (John 3:16, KJV)

Russian Synodal Bible (1876): *Ибо так возлюбил Бог мир, что отдал Сына Своего Единородного* The verse that sums up the Gospel, and the verse to carry from this year.

COURSE EXAM

# Midterm Exam

**Covers Units 1–6.** Time: 60–75 minutes.

Questions 1–3 are oral: the parent asks and marks. The rest are written, without notes. 100 points. Grade with the separate answer key. A written answer counts when the Cyrillic is right; stress marks are not required in the student’s writing except where the question asks for them.

---

1. **5 pts** **Lesson 1.2**
   Oral: Read aloud: ма́ма, молоко́, хорошо́, спаси́бо, пожа́луйста, здра́вствуйте. Then introduce yourself: name, age, where you live, family.

2. **5 pts** **Lesson 5.3**
   Oral: Role-play ordering a meal in a café and asking the price.

3. **5 pts** **Lesson 6.3**
   Oral: Ask for and give directions from your home to a church or shop.

4. **5 pts** **Lesson 1.1**
   Write in Cyrillic: privet, spasibo, Moskva, kniga, shkola.

5. **5 pts** **Lesson 1.3**

   Write the formal and informal ways to say hello and goodbye.

6. **5 pts** **Lesson 2.1**

   Translate: Как тебя́ зову́т? Отку́да ты?

7. **5 pts** **Lesson 2.2**

   Give the gender of: брат, ма́ма, окно́, ночь, па́па.

8. **5 pts** **Lesson 2.3**

   Replace with он, она́, оно́: стол, кни́га, мо́ре.

9. **5 pts** **Lesson 4.2**

   Conjugate чита́ть in the present.

10. **5 pts** **Lesson 4.2**

    Conjugate говори́ть in the present.

11. **5 pts** **Lesson 4.3**

    Write the numbers in words: 3, 11, 20, 45, 100.

12. **5 pts** **Lesson 3.2**

    Say “I have a brother” and “Do you have a dog?”

13. **5 pts** **Lesson 5.2**

    Put in the accusative: Я люблю́ (ма́ма). Я ем (ры́ба). Я пью (вода́).

14. **5 pts** **Lesson 5.1**

    Translate: Я хочу́ чай с молоко́м и хлеб.

15. **5 pts** **Lesson 6.1**

    Put in the prepositional: Я живу́ в (Москва́). Мы в (шко́ла). Кни́га на (стол).

16. **5 pts** **Lesson 6.2**

    Choose идти́ or е́хать: Я ___ в шко́лу пешко́м. Мы ___ в Москву́ на по́езде.

17. **5 pts** **Lesson 6.3**

    Translate: Где библиоте́ка? Она́ сле́ва, ря́дом с це́рковью.

18. **5 pts** **Lesson 4.1**

Make plural: стол, кни́га, окно́.

19. **5 pts** **Lesson 5.1**

Culture: Name two Russian foods and two things about Russian schools.

20. **5 pts** **Lesson 3.1**

Scripture: Write John 1:1a in Russian and translate Exodus 20:12a from Russian: Почита́й отца́ твоего́ и мать твою́.

**ANSWER KEY**

1. Clear reading with the stress and unstressed o as “a”; for example: Меня́ зову́т… Мне пятна́дцать лет. Я живу́ в… У меня́ есть брат и сестра́.
2. For example: Здра́вствуйте! Я хочу́ суп и чай, пожа́луйста. Ско́лько сто́ит? Спаси́бо!
3. For example: Скажи́те, пожа́луйста, где це́рковь? Иди́те пря́мо, пото́м напра́во.
4. Приве́т, спаси́бо, Москва́, кни́га, шко́ла.
5. Здра́вствуйте / приве́т; до свида́ния / пока́.
6. What is your name? Where are you from?
7. Masculine, feminine, neuter, feminine, masculine (па́па is masculine though it ends in -a).
8. Он, она́, оно́.
9. Чита́ю, чита́ешь, чита́ет, чита́ем, чита́ете, чита́ют.
10. Говорю́, говори́шь, говори́т, говори́м, говори́те, говоря́т.
11. Три, оди́ннадцать, два́дцать, со́рок пять, сто.
12. У меня́ есть брат. У тебя́ есть соба́ка?
13. Ма́му, ры́бу, во́ду.
14. I want tea with milk and bread.
15. В Москве́, в шко́ле, на столе́.
16. Иду́; е́дем.
17. Where is the library? It is on the left, next to the church.
18. Столы́, кни́ги, о́кна.
19. For example: борщ, блины́; school begins on September 1; grades are from 5 (best) to 2.
20. В нача́ле бы́ло Сло́во. Honour thy father and thy mother.

Printable answer key (PDF, for the parent)

**COURSE EXAM**

# Final Exam

**Covers Cumulative, with emphasis on Units 7–12.** Time: 75–90 minutes.

Questions 1–3 are oral: the parent asks and marks. The rest are written, without notes. 100 points. Grade with the separate answer key. A written answer counts when the Cyrillic is right; stress marks are not required in the student's writing except where the question asks for them.

---

1. **5 pts** **Lesson 12.3**
   Oral: Recite John 3:16 in Russian.

2. **5 pts** **Lesson 11.1**
   Oral: Tell what you did yesterday (five sentences) and what you will do tomorrow (three).

3. **5 pts** **Lesson 11.3**
   Oral: Retell Tolstoy's What Men Live By in simple Russian.

4. **5 pts** **Lesson 7.2**
   Describe a person: tall, with dark hair, wearing a red sweater.

5. **5 pts** **Lesson 7.3**
   Make the adjective agree: (но́вый) кни́га, (но́вый) пальто́, (но́вый) дом.

6. **5 pts** **Lesson 8.1**
   Translate: Сего́дня хо́лодно, идёт снег. Мне нра́вится зима́.

7. **5 pts** **Lesson 8.3**
   Say "I like music" and "She likes to read."

8. **5 pts** **Lesson 9.1**
   Translate: Ско́лько сейча́с вре́мени? Сейча́с три часа́.

9. **5 pts** **Lesson 9.2**
   Conjugate the reflexive verb учи́ться in the present.

10. **5 pts** **Lesson 9.3**

    Name the days of the week in Russian.

11. **5 pts** **Lesson 10.2**

    Give the Christmas and Easter greetings, with the answer to the Easter greeting.

12. **5 pts** **Lesson 10.3**

    Put into the genitive after нет: брат, вода́, вре́мя.

13. **5 pts** **Lesson 10.3**

    Say “There was no school yesterday.”

14. **5 pts** **Lesson 11.1**

    Put into the past (он, она́, они́): писа́ть, быть.

15. **5 pts** **Lesson 11.1**

    Put into the future: Я игра́ю. Мы чита́ем.

16. **5 pts** **Lesson 12.3**

    Translate Genesis 1:1 from Russian: В нача́ле сотвори́л Бог не́бо и зе́млю.

17. **5 pts** **Lesson 11.2**

    Who was Pushkin? Give the first line of Winter Morning.

18. **5 pts** **Lesson 12.2**

    Put in order with dates: the Synodal Bible, the Baptism of Rus’, Cyril and Methodius’ mission, the Ostromir Gospel.

19. **5 pts** **Lesson 12.1**

    Say “Russia is the biggest country in the world” and “The Volga is the longest river in Europe.”

20. **5 pts** **Lesson 12.3**

    Unseen: Translate Psalm 23:1 (Synodal Psalm 22:1) from Russian: Госпо́дь — Па́стырь мой; я ни в чём не бу́ду нужда́ться. (help: па́стырь shepherd; нужда́ться to be in need)

**ANSWER KEY**

1. И́бо так возлюби́л Бог мир, что о́тдал Сы́на Своего́ Единоро́дного, да́бы вся́кий, ве́рующий в Него́, не поги́б, но име́л жизнь ве́чную.
2. For example: Вчера́ я встал в семь часо́в… За́втра я бу́ду чита́ть.
3. For example: Семён был бе́дный. Он нашёл челове́ка у це́ркви. Матрёна дала́ ему́ хлеб. Челове́к был а́нгел. Лю́ди жи́вы любо́вью.
4. Он высо́кий, у него́ тёмные во́лосы, он в кра́сном сви́тере.
5. Но́вая кни́га, но́вое пальто́, но́вый дом.
6. Today it is cold and snowing. I like winter.
7. Мне нра́вится му́зыка. Ей нра́вится чита́ть.
8. What time is it now? It is three o’clock.
9. Учу́сь, у́чишься, у́чится, у́чимся, у́читесь, у́чатся.
10. Понеде́льник, вто́рник, среда́, четве́рг, пя́тница, суббо́та, воскресе́нье.
11. С Рождество́м Христо́вым! Христо́с воскре́се! — Вои́стину воскре́се!
12. Нет бра́та, нет воды́, нет вре́мени.
13. Вчера́ не́ было шко́лы.
14. Писа́л, писа́ла, писа́ли; был, была́, бы́ли.
15. Я бу́ду игра́ть. Мы бу́дем чита́ть.
16. In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth.
17. Russia’s greatest poet (1799–1837). Моро́з и со́лнце; день чуде́сный!
18. Cyril and Methodius 860s (863); Baptism of Rus’ 988; Ostromir Gospel 1056–1057; Synodal Bible 1876.
19. Росси́я — са́мая больша́я страна́ в ми́ре. Во́лга — са́мая дли́нная река́ в Евро́пе.
20. The LORD is my shepherd; I shall not want.

Printable answer key (PDF, for the parent)